教辅资料站
电子教辅 试卷练习
知识总结 备课资源
扫码关注获取更多学习资料

典中点®

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



五年级英语下

WY版 按100:1配赠教师用书

（三年级起点）

内含名师划重点基础默写本

经典好题·精妙点拨

吉林教育出版社

荣德基 主编

典中点

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



五年级 英语

下（WY版）

主　　编：荣德基
本册主编：袁　婷

微信公众号
教辅资料站

吉林教育出版社

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

目录 CONTENTS

Module 1

Unit 1 We lived in a small house. …… 1

Unit 2 She didn't have a television. …… 3

Module 1 能力过关练 …… 5

Module 2

Unit 1 She learnt English. …… 7

Unit 2 Mr Li was a teacher. …… 9

Module 2 能力过关练 …… 11

Module 3

Unit 1 She had eggs and sausages. …… 13

Unit 2 Sam ate four hamburgers. …… 15

Module 3 能力过关练 …… 17

Module 4

Unit 1 Let's make a home library. …… 19

Unit 2 We can find information from books and CDs. …… 21

Module 4 能力过关练 …… 23

Module 5

Unit 1 It's big and light. …… 25

Unit 2 It's too big for you. …… 27

Module 5 能力过关练 …… 29

Module 6

Unit 1 I went there last year. …… 31

Unit 2 She visited the Tianchi Lake. …… 33

Module 6 能力过关练 …… 35

Module 7

Unit 1 My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning. …… 37

Unit 2 I'll be home at seven o'clock. …… 39

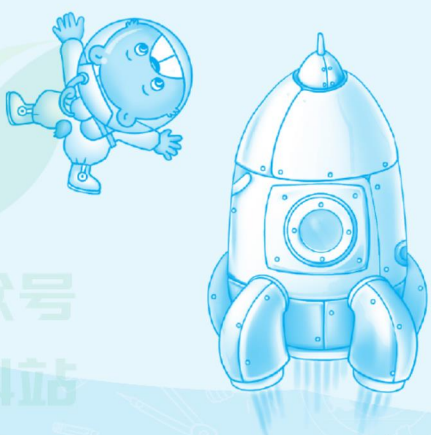
Module 7 能力过关练 …… 41

Module 8

Unit 1 Will you help me? …… 43

Unit 2 I made a kite. …… 45

Module 8 能力过关练 …… 47



微信公众号 教辅资料站

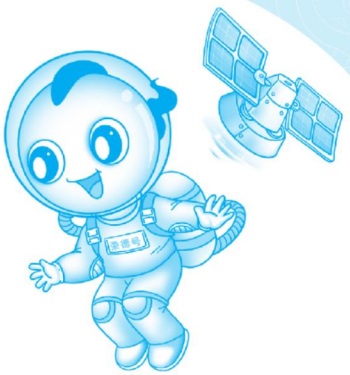
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 9

Unit 1 We laughed a lot. …… 49

Unit 2 Mum bought new T-shirts for you. …… 51

Module 9 能力过关练 …… 53



Module 10

Unit 1 Where are you going? …… 55

Unit 2 I'm in New York now. …… 57

Module 10 能力过关练 …… 59

期末复习训练

Module 1 复习训练…… 61

Module 2 复习训练…… 63

Module 3 复习训练…… 65

Module 4 复习训练…… 67

Module 5 复习训练…… 69

Module 6 复习训练…… 71

Module 7 复习训练…… 73

Module 8 复习训练…… 75

Module 9 复习训练…… 77

Module 10 复习训练 …… 79

全书听力专练 …… 81

全书知识小结 …… 83

8 开活页部分

月考卷一

Modules 1 ~ 3 过关检测卷 …… 85

期中检测卷 …… 89

月考卷二

Modules 6 ~ 8 过关检测卷 …… 93

期末检测卷 …… 97

参考答案及点拨…… 101

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

题有千变万化 我有妙法拆招

——本书题型解题方法示例

小学《典中点》英语再度全新升级，为大家带来了解题良方——解题的方法。有方法，解题快，不丢分！更多绝招请大家在书中寻找哦。



书面表达

综合能力题

阅读理解
完形填空
补全对话

六、阅读短文，根据短文内容连线。

It is Sunday today. It's sunny. I don't go to school. I want to go shopping. I get up at half past six in the morning. I have some noodles and ...

1. get up	A. at 8：00
2. go out	B. at 12：00
3. have lunch	C. at 6：30
4. read the book	D. at 8：45
5. go to bed	E. at 3：00

方法点拨：本题用信息定位法解答。

即快速阅读短文，并搜索出题目中活动的关键词，通过信息定位找出句子中对应的时间，连线即可。如搜索get up,定位到句子“I get up at half past six in the morning.”就可以连线。

句子题

改写句子
句子翻译
句意填空

三、用所给单词的正确形式填空。

【时态判断法】

1.He _____ (be) five then. He was a naughty boy.

2.He liked _____ (walk) to school.

方法点拨：本题用时态判断法解答。

即先判断句子时态，再根据主语的人称和数的不同，选择正确的形式填空。如1、3、4小题为一般过去时，动词也应用过去式;5小题为一般现在时，doesn't后面用动词原形;6小题为现在进行时，动词应加-ing。

单项选择

词汇题

一、仿照下面的例子写一写。

【构词记忆法】

例：sing（唱）— singer（歌唱家）

1. teach（教）— _____（　　）
2. write（写）— _____（　　）
3. dance（跳舞）— _____（　　）

方法点拨：本题用归类记忆法解答。

构词法可以帮我们记忆相关联的单词。英文中有些单词加上后缀-er就变成了“从事某种职业的人”。根据例子，在动词词尾加上后缀-er就可以。如果动词以e结尾，需去掉e再加-er。

听力题

四、听短文，选择与所听录音一致的选项。

【三步两遍听音法】

1. I had _____ and milk at school.

A.eggs　　B.bread　　C.rice

方法点拨：本题用三步两遍听音法解答。

第一步：阅读题干，预估题意;第二步：第一遍听录音，边听边做，注意捕捉关键信息;第三步：第二遍听录音，检查核对答案。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 1

Unit 1 We lived in a small house. ☞(答案见102页)

一、找出不同类的单词，将序号填入题前括号里。

( )1. A. coming B. change C. talking

( )2. A. bus B. car C. enough

( )3. A. life B. beautiful C. different

( )4. A. computer B. television C. lady

( )5. A. grandma B. still C. grandchild

二、读一读，看图片选词填空。

television programme house
different enough lady life

1.  2.  3. 

4.  5.  6. 

1. That old _____ is Amy's grandma.
2. We have _____ food now.
3. There is a big _____.
4. _____ was _____ in China many years ago.
5. We lived in a small _____.
6. This is a _____ about elephants.

三、核心素养练

同学们，社会的发展使我们的生活发生了很大变化，请你读一读下面的句子，在能够体现美好生活的句子前面画☺，不能体现的画☹。

☺1. We live in a big house.

☺2. We didn't have enough food.

☺3. There are lots of buses.

☺4. We lived in a small house.

☺5. We watch TV every day.

☺6. There weren't many buses.

☺7. We use cell phones and computers.

☺8. There weren't any televisions.

☺9. There weren't any supermarkets.

☺10. We study and shop online(在网上).

四、单项选择。

( )1. My parents and I live _____ a big house.

A. in B. to C. on

( )2. Our country is _____. We love it very much.

A. change B. changes C. changing

( )3. There weren't _____ televisions many years ago. 【导学号2271504】

A. some B. any C. one

( )4. Thank you for talking to _____.

A. we B. me C. he

( )5. Wang Hao is still in Beijing _____ his father.

A. and B. or C. with

( )6. It's a programme _____ monkeys.

A. for B. in C. about

( )7. She _____ TV every day.

A. watching B. watched C. watches

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )8. There _____ three books on the desk one hour ago. But there _____ only one now.

A. was; was B. were; is C. are; are

( )9. Many years ago we _____ have enough food.

A. / B. didn't C. don't

五、连词成句。

1. didn't they have food enough (.)

_____

2. grandma TV yesterday my watched (.)

_____

3. small ten was a house there ago years (.)

_____

4. any weren't televisions there (.)

_____

5. very in ago life different years was China many (.)

_____

六、读一读，选择合适的句子补全对话。

【分析推理法】

A: Look! 1. _____

B: Wow, it's beautiful.

A: Our school was different.

B: 2. _____

A: It was small four years ago. There were only two hundred students and twenty teachers. There were only six classrooms then.

B: 3. _____

A: There are twenty classrooms in the new tall building.

B: It's big now. How many students are there now?

A: 4. _____

B: 5. _____

A: Yes, we do. We also have an art room, a music room, a gym and two computer rooms.

B: That's great! And the playground is big too.

A: Yes. Our teachers are strict, funny and kind. They are very young. I like my school very much.

A. Do you have a school library now?
B. How many classrooms now?
C. There are about seven hundred students and sixty teachers now.
D. This is a photo of my school.
E. How was it different?

七、核心素养练

用英语描述一件事情时，语言形式会根据事情发生的时间产生时态变化。比如过去发生的事可以用一般过去时，现在发生的事可以用一般现在时，将要发生的事可以用一般将来时等。不同时态动词会有不同变化。

看下面的两幅图片，请你用所给词的适当形式将短文补充完整。

1.  2. 

My name is Li Ming. Look at these photos. I 1. _____ (live) in a small house four years ago. Now I 2. _____ (live) in a big house. There 3. _____ (is) a small dog four years ago. Now there 4. _____ (are) three dogs. There 5. _____ (is) a small tree four years ago. Now there 6. _____ (is) a big tree near the house. I flew a kite four years ago. Now I am 7. _____ (listen) to music.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 She didn't have a television.

(答案见 103 页)

一、判断下列每组单词中画线部分的发音是(T)否(F)相同。

( )1. A. party B. warm C. farmer

( )2. A. walk B. autumn C. talk

( )3. A. lady B. programme C. radio

( )4. A. life B. night C. write

( )5. A. rain B. play C. day

二、根据图片及字母提示补全句子。

1. You can see the moon at _____. (g, n, i, h, t)



2. I like listening to the _____. (r, o, a, i, d)



3. We cooked on the _____. (f, e, r, i)



4. I've got a _____. (t, e, e, l, h, p, e, o, n)



5. My grandpa worked in the _____. (e, i, f, l, d)



6. The boy can _____ letters. (t,w,e,r,i)



三、请在下列单词前加一个字母,使之变为另一个单词,并仿照例子写一个短语。

【加法记忆法】

例:long — along along the river

1. go —_____ _____

2. any —_____ _____

3. our —_____ _____

4. ear —_____ _____

5. all —_____ _____

四、给句子选择相应的图片。

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

( )1. He can jump really high.

( )2. John lives in a big city.

( )3. The farmer works in the fields every day.

( )4. I was in China three weeks ago.

( )5. My grandpa didn't have a telephone ten years ago.

五、单项选择。

( )1. I _____ a television programme last night.

A. watch B. is watching

C. watched

( )2. They didn't have a television _____ a computer many years ago.

A. and B. or C. too

( )3. Where _____ you three days ago?

A. were B. are C. was

( )4. _____ old lady is telling a story to the children.

A. / B. A C. An

( )5. We _____ in a big city now. But five years ago, we _____ in a small village.

A. lived; live B. live; lived

C. lives; lived

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )6. My parents _____ in Wuhan last year. But they _____ in Sanya now.
A. are; were B. were; are
C. was; are

( )7. My father _____ ill yesterday.
A. isn't B. aren't C. wasn't

( )8. My grandma _____ on a fire many years ago.
A. cook B. cooked C. cooks

( )9. There _____ lots of flowers before.
A. are B. was C. were

( )10. My little brother _____ walk two months ago. But now he can walk.
A. can B. can't C. couldn't

六、选择合适的短语补全句子。

A. a big city	B. worked in the fields
C. are different from	D. last night
E. talked about	F. has got

1. I watched TV with my grandpa _____.
2. An old lady _____ her life many years ago.
3. We live in _____ now.
4. Many things _____ the past.
5. Those farmers _____.
6. My grandma _____ three children.

七、按要求完成下列各题。

1. There were some cars. (改为否定句)

_____

2. We had lots of food. (改为否定句)

_____

3. I watch TV every day. (用 yesterday 改写)

_____

4. He lived in a small village twenty years ago. (改为一般疑问句)

_____

5. I worked in the fields last Sunday. (对画线部分提问)

_____

八、完形填空。

Hello, I'm Yang Fan. I live in a small village. Five years ago, my school 1. _____ small. There was 2. _____ one building and a small playground. We couldn't play football. But now my school is 3. _____. There are five new buildings. And the playground is very big and beautiful. I often play games with my friends on it. There is a big 4. _____, too. We often read books in it. I can learn a lot 5. _____ the books. I have a good time in my new school.

( )1. A. was B. is C. were
( )2. A. but B. still C. only
( )3. A. old B. different C. change
( )4. A. zoo B. library C. restaurant
( )5. A. to B. of C. from

九、阅读短文，判断句子正(T)误(F)。

【分析推理和关键词定位法】

There are two pictures about our city. Look! There was a small park many years ago, but now there is a big and beautiful park. And in the park, there is a lake with some ducks on it. There wasn't a lake in the past. In our city there were many old houses and small trees. But now there are many new high buildings. The trees are very tall now. There are many supermarkets and cars now. I love my city.

( )1. There was a big park in our city in the past.
( )2. There is a lake in the park.
( )3. There are many new high buildings in our city now.
( )4. The trees are not very tall.
( )5. There are many cars in the city.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 1 能力过关练 ☞(答案见 103 页)

听说专练

听力训练

一、听录音，选出你听到的单词。

( )1. A. friend B. field C. fire

( )2. A. still B. different C. life

( )3. A. work B. world C. warm

( )4. A. radio B. really C. read

( )5. A. enough B. night C. write

二、听录音，给下列图片排序。


( )


( )


( )


( )


( )

三、听录音，选择你所听到的句子。

( )1. A. I watched a television programme about China last night.
B. I watched a television programme with my grandpa last night.
C. I watched a television programme about England last night.

( )2. A. We lived in a small house.
B. We live in a big house.
C. We live in a beautiful house.

( )3. A. An old lady talked about her life.
B. A young lady talked about her life.
C. An old man talked about his life.

( )4. A. There were many buses.
B. There are lots of buses.
C. There weren't many buses.

( )5. A. She didn't have a television or a computer.
B. She didn't have a television or a telephone.
C. She didn't have a television or a radio.

( )6. A. She couldn't read or write.
B. She couldn't jump or walk.
C. She couldn't hear or speak.

四、听录音，将短文补充完整。

Many years ago, there 1. _____ any buses or cars. Jack 2. _____ in a small house. He 3. _____ have enough food. But now there 4. _____ lots of buses and cars. Jack 5. _____ in a big house. He has lots of food.

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例：


many years ago


now

(house)

We lived in a small house many years ago.
We live in a big house now.

1.


many years ago (buses)


now

2.


ten years ago (tree)


now

3.


five years ago (cat)


now

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

读写专练

六、核心素养练

思维训练不仅可以使我们的大脑更加聪明灵活，同时还可以提高我们的创新能力以及分析和解决问题的能力。

请你将下列句子仿照例句变成否定形式，注意动词的变化哦！

例：I watched television last night.

I didn't watch television last night.

1. She talked about her life many years ago.

_____

2. My grandpa worked in the fields yesterday.

_____

3. She cooked on a fire.

_____

4. She had a television and a telephone.

_____

5. She could read and write.

_____

七、阅读短文，根据短文内容填空。

My name is Li Jianguo. I'm seventy years old now. I have a happy family. I have one son, one daughter and three grandchildren. However (然而), my life was very different many years ago. At that time, I lived in a small and dirty house. My mother cooked on a fire. We didn't have enough food. We didn't have lots of clothes. Now I live in a big and nice house with my son. I have a big television. I have lots of food and clothes. My son has a new car. I'm very happy now.

1. Li Jianguo has _____ children.
2. He lived in a _____ and _____ house many years ago.
3. He _____ lots of food or clothes many years ago.
4. His son has a new _____now.
5. Li Jianguo is _____ years old now.

八、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

The world is changing very fast. In the past, my grandparents lived in a small house. It was very old. They didn't have enough food or clothes. There was a small tree beside the house. There weren't any televisions or telephones. Now they live in a big and beautiful house. They have got enough food and clothes. They watch TV every day. They can use the computer, too. They are very happy now.

(　　)1. There was a small _____beside the house.

A. dog　　B. tree　　C. cat

(　　)2. My grandparents didn't have enough _____.

A. food　　B. clothes

C. food or clothes

(　　)3. There weren't any televisions or _____.

A. telephones　　B. radios　　C. books

(　　)4. My grandparents can use the _____ now.

A. car　　B. radio　　C. computer

(　　)5. The world is changing very _____ .

A. fast　　B. far　　C. clean

九、小作文。

小朋友，你家的生活和过去比较有哪些变化呢？写出来和大家共享吧。(不少于五句话)

提示词汇：five years ago; one television; a computer; a bright (明亮的) house; a nice car

_____

_____

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 2

Unit 1 She learnt English. ☞(答案见 104 页)

一、仿照下面的例子写一写。 【构词记忆法】

例:sing(唱)—singer(歌唱家)

1. teach(教)— _____( )
2. write(写)— _____( )
3. dance(跳舞)— _____( )
4. drive(开车)— _____( )
5. farm(农场)— _____( )

二、单项选择。

( )1. My mother _____ English ten years ago.
A. teaches B. taught C. is teaching

( )2. She danced in _____ countries.
A. lots of B. a lots of
C. lot of

( )3. Did you learn _____ foreign languages?
A. any B. some C. a

( )4. Twenty years ago, he didn't _____ English. But he is _____ English now.
A. learnt; learnt B. learns; learning
C. learn; learning

( )5. —_____ is this?
—It's my aunt.
A. What B. Whose C. Who

( ) 6. —Did the old lady dance twenty years ago?
—_____
A. Yes, she was. B. Yes, she did.
C. No, she can't.

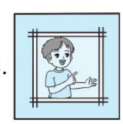
三、读对话,选出相应的图片。

【关键词对应图片法】

( )1. —What is he doing?
—He's learning English.

A.  B. 

( )2. —Is this your brother?
—Yes, it is.

A.  B. 

( )3. —Did he watch TV yesterday?
—Yes, he did.

A.  B. 

( )4. —Who are they?
—They are my grandparents.

A.  B. 

( )5. —What is your uncle?
—He is a driver.

A.  B. 

四、选词填空。(只填序号)

A. Who B. Where C. Did D. How E. What

1. —_____ did he go to school?
—He went to school by bus.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. —_____ is that lady?
—She is my English teacher.
3. —_____ did she do yesterday?
—She learnt foreign languages.
4. —_____ they watch TV every day?
—No, they didn't.
5. —_____ were you last night?
—I was at school.

五、核心素养练

我们在使用英语时，要根据正确的情境，使用恰当而得体的句子。请你读一读，选出正确的句子。

(　　)1. 你想知道露西家照片上的人是谁，你会问：
A. Who are they, Lucy?
B. Where are you, Lucy?
C. What did you do, Lucy?

(　　)2. 大明想知道你爸爸是不是司机，他应问：
A. Is your grandpa a driver?
B. Is your father a doctor?
C. Is your father a driver?

(　　)3. 妈妈问你爷爷在干什么，你告诉妈妈：
A. My grandpa is learning English.
B. My grandma learnt Chinese.
C. My grandpa learns Maths.

(　　)4. 你想告诉朋友，你奶奶以前是舞蹈演员，你应说：
A. My grandma was a dancer.
B. She danced in lots of cities.
C. My grandma learnt English.

(　　)5. 你想知道埃米昨天是不是做蛋糕了，你应问：
A. Did Amy go to the park yesterday?
B. Did Amy do her homework yesterday?
C. Did Amy make a cake yesterday?

六、看图片，仿照例子写句子。

例：She learnt to cook yesterday.



1. He _____ yesterday.



2. He _____ yesterday.



3. She _____ yesterday.



七、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

My name is Jack. I am a pupil. Look! These are my parents. They are very busy. My father was a worker ten years ago. But he is a driver now. My mother is a doctor. She works in our town. She gets up early in the morning and goes to the hospital to look after her patients（病人）. She wrote a book last year. She is a good doctor. My parents love me and I love them too.

(　　)1. Is Jack a doctor?
A. Yes, he is.　　B. Yes, he was.
C. No, he isn't.

(　　)2. Was Jack's father a worker ten years ago?
A. Yes, he is.　　B. Yes, he was.
C. No, he isn't.

(　　)3. Is Jack's mother a doctor now?
A. Yes, she is.　　B. Yes, she was.
C. No, she isn't.

(　　)4. Did Jack's mother write a book last year?
A. Yes, she is.　　B. Yes, she did.
C. No, she didn't.

(　　)5. Who is a driver now?
A. Jack.　　B. Jack's father.
C. Jack's mother.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Mr Li was a teacher.

☞(答案见 104 页)

一、核心素养练

观察单词中的字母组合,并掌握其发音,可以帮助我们记忆单词。请你选出每组单词中共同缺少的字母组合,填在横线上,并判断该字母组合在每组单词中的读音是(√)否(×)相同。

ar　al　ass　air　aw

(　　)1. dr _____　s _____

(　　)2. cl _____　p _____

(　　)3. h _____d　w _____m

(　　)4. w _____k　t _____k

(　　)5. ch _____　h _____

二、看图片,选择恰当的单词填空。

danced　teacher　hard
pupil　English　dancer

1. Five years ago, he was a _____.
He studied very _____.



2. Now he is a _____. He is teaching _____.



3. Twenty years ago, my grandma was a _____. She _____ in lots of Chinese cities.



三、单项选择。

(　　)1. Wang Feng _____ only six then. Now he _____ thirty.
A. is; is　B. was; is　C. was; are

(　　)2. He likes _____ at school.
A. working　B. work　C. works

(　　)3. Chen Hai is _____ English teacher.
A. a　B. /　C. an

(　　)4. He's _____ English now.
A. learn　B. learnt　C. learning

(　　)5. —What did he do yesterday?
—He _____ football at school.
A. plays　B. play　C. played

(　　)6. Mr Li was a teacher. He _____ Chinese.
A. teach　B. taught　C. teaches

(　　)7. He walked _____ school.
A. to　B. to go　C. by

(　　)8. —_____ he teach Art?
—Yes, he did.
A. Do　B. Does　C. Did

(　　)9. —Does she like learning English?
—No, she _____.
A. didn't　B. does　C. doesn't

(　　)10. Fangfang _____ foreign languages very hard then.
A. study　B. studied　C. studies

四、给下列图片选择合适的句子。

A. The children are reading books in the library.
B. Miss Wang teaches us Maths.
C. The little girl studies very hard.
D. They walked to school five years ago.
E. She likes dancing.

1. 　(　　)

2. 　(　　)

3. 　(　　)

4. 　(　　)

5. 

(　　)

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

五、选择合适的单词并用其正确的形式填空。

study　read　work　play　swim

1. I like _____ storybooks.
2. He learnt to _____ last summer.
3. John is a good pupil. He _____ very hard.
4. Mr Li doesn't _____ now. He is old.
5. Yao Ming _____ basketball in China and the US.

六、核心素养练

说和写是英语输出能力的体现，在具体情景中准确地运用语言表达能提高我们英语语言输出的能力。请你根据下面的图片提示仿照例句写句子。

例：




He didn't fly a kite yesterday.

He did his homework yesterday.

1.





_____

_____

2.




_____

_____

七、选择合适的句子完成对话。【问答结合法】

Mary: Who's this, Amy?

Amy: 1. _____

Mary: Why was she wearing these beautiful clothes?

Amy: 2. _____ She danced in many other countries.

Mary: Can she speak English?

Amy: Yes. 3. _____

Mary: 4. _____

Amy: She lives in Shanghai with my uncle. 5. _____ But she teaches her students to dance in an art school.

A. Where does she live now?
B. It's my grandma.
C. She doesn't dance now.
D. She learnt English.
E. Because she was a dancer.

八、阅读短文，将对应的图片连线。

Look! Here is a photo of my family. The old lady is my grandma. She was a singer many years ago. My grandpa was a doctor. He worked in a hospital. My parents are teachers. They teach in different schools. My father teaches Chinese. But my mother teaches English. They like working at school. The lovely girl is me. I'm Lily. I like dancing.

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 

E. 

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 2 能力过关练 (答案见104页)

听说专练

听力训练

一、听录音，选出你所听句子中含有的单词。【听关键词法】

( )1. A. grandma B. grandparents C. grandpa

( )2. A. people B. child C. pupil

( )3. A. hard B. hand C. head

( )4. A. driver B. dancer C. doctor

( )5. A. learnt B. learning C. learn

二、听录音，选出与你所听内容相符的图片。

( )1. A.  B.  C. 

( )2. A.  B.  C. 

( )3. A.  B.  C. 

( )4. A.  B.  C. 

( )5. A.  B.  C. 

三、听录音，选出你所听到的句子。

【三步两遍听音法】

( )1. A. My mother wrote a book last year.
B. My mother wrote a letter last Sunday.

( )2. A. Mr Zhang is working now.
B. Mr Zhang doesn't work now.

( )3. A. He taught Science at school.
B. He taught Chinese at school.

( )4. A. Her brother was thirteen then.
B. Her brother is thirty now.

( )5. A. I like working at school.
B. He likes working in the hospital.

四、听录音，判断下列句子正（T）误（F）。

( )1. Daming played football yesterday.

( )2. Li Wei was only six then.

( )3. They're Lingling's grandparents.

( )4. Tom's grandma is learning English.

( )5. Mike's mother was an art teacher then.

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例： 

(twenty years ago, pupil) (now, maths teacher)

Twenty years ago, he was a pupil.

Now he is a maths teacher.

1.  

(five years ago, learn Music) (now, learn Computer)

2.  

(two years ago, walk) (now, by bus)

3.  

(ten years ago, learn to dance) (now, dancer)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

读写专练

六、仿照例子改写句子。

例：He is learning English now. (yesterday)

He learnt English yesterday.

1. My father is writing a book now. (yesterday)

_____

2. My grandma is cooking fish now. (yesterday)

_____

3. Sam is watching TV now. (yesterday)

_____

4. Mr Smart is teaching a foreign language now. (yesterday)

_____

5. Daming is studying very hard now. (then)

_____

七、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Many years ago, my mother was a teacher. She worked in a primary school. She taught English. She was a good teacher. All the children liked her. Now she doesn't work. She is learning to draw. She likes drawing. She is very happy every day. I love her very much.

(　　)1. My mother was a dancer.

(　　)2. My mother worked in a middle school.

(　　)3. My mother taught English.

(　　)4. Now my mother doesn't work.

(　　)5. My mother is learning to swim.

八、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

Mrs Brown was an old woman. She lived on a small farm. One day she went to the post office. She wanted to write a letter to her friend. But she couldn't read or write, so she asked a young man to help her.

"Can you help me write a letter to my friends?" she asked. "Yes, of course!" the young man said. He began to write as Mrs Brown was saying. In about fifteen minutes, he finished the letter.

"Are there any other things you want to say, madam?" asked the young man.

"Oh, yes, please write down one more sentence on the paper, saying sorry for the poor (糟糕的) handwriting."

(　　)1. Mrs Brown lived _____.

A. in a city　　B. in a town

C. on a farm

(　　)2. She went into the post office _____.

A. to write a letter to her friend

B. to buy a stamp

C. to talk with a young man

(　　)3. It took the young man _____ minutes to write the letter.

【关键词定位法】

A. five　　B. ten　　C. fifteen

(　　)4. Mrs Brown thought the man's handwriting was _____.

A. good　　B. bad　　C. true

(　　) 5. Did the young man help her?

【推理猜测法】

A. Yes, he did.　B. I don't know.

C. No, he didn't.

九、小作文。以"My Grandparents"为题介绍一下你的爷爷奶奶过去是干什么工作的。(不少于40个单词)

提示：many years ago; my grandpa/grandma; dancer; teacher

_____

_____

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 3

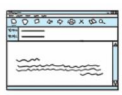
Unit 1 She had eggs and sausages. ☞(答案见105页)

一、圈出句子中与例词同类的单词。

1. breakfast What did she have for lunch?
2. sandwich She had a hamburger yesterday.
3. have What does it say?
4. Chinese Yesterday she had an English breakfast.
5. delicious It's a traditional dish.

二、根据图片或首字母提示补全句子。

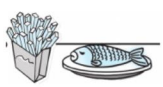
1. Lingling had eggs and sausages for b_____.
2. Sam has got an _____ from Lingling.



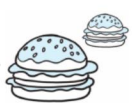
3. —What did Daming have for dinner?
   —He had s_____.



4. Did Amy have f_____ and c_____ for l_____?



5. Fangfang had _____ yesterday.



6. Do you like t_____ Chinese dishes?

三、单项选择。

(　　)1. I had rice _____ breakfast.
A. to　　B. for　　C. with

(　　)2. Daming has got _____ email from Lingling.　　【导学号2271504】
A. an　　B. two　　C. a

(　　)3. —What did Sam _____ last night?
—He _____ two sandwiches.
A. have; have　　B. has; had
C. have; had

(　　)4. Did you have _____ this morning?
A. lunch　　B. dinner　　C. breakfast

(　　)5. Lingling _____ some fish and chips.
A. had　　B. eating　　C. drank

四、选词填空。

and　from　have　about　says

1. I've got an email _____ Jack.
2. What do you _____ for breakfast?
3. It's a programme _____ English food.
4. They had eggs _____ sausages for dinner.
5. Lingling _____ dumplings are very delicious.

五、核心素养练

我们在使用英语进行问答时，要根据正确的情境，使用恰当而得体的句子。请你根据图示选择合适的选项补全对话。　【问答结合法】

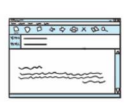
A. Have you got an email from Tom?
B. What did your mother have for lunch?
C. Does Amy like hamburgers?
D. He says sandwiches are delicious.
E. I had eggs, bread and milk.

1. —_____

—Yes, she does.

2. —What did you have for breakfast?


—_____

3. —_____

—Yes, I have.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. —What does your brother say?



—_____

5. —_____



—She had rice.

六、核心素养练

李红在学校吃早餐和午餐，请你看一看她们学校的食谱，根据表格补全句子。

【问题寻找法】

Weekly Menu

	Breakfast	Lunch
Mon.	milk, eggs, apples	rice, meat, potatoes
Tue.	noodles, oranges	rice, fish, tofu
Wed.	milk, bread, pears	rice, tomatoes, eggs
Thur.	noodles, eggs, bananas	rice, chicken, beans
Fri.	dumplings, apples	rice, fish, vegetables

1. —What does she have for breakfast on Mondays?

—She has _____, _____ and _____.

2. —What does she have for lunch on Tuesdays?

—She has _____, _____ and _____.

3. —What does she have for _____ on Wednesdays?

—She has milk, bread and pears.

4. —What does she have for _____ on Thursdays?

—She has rice, chicken and beans.

5. —What does she have for breakfast on Fridays?

—She has _____ and _____.

七、按要求完成句子。

1. He had fish and sausages for lunch.

（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ he _____ for lunch?

2. I had eggs and milk for breakfast.

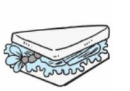
（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ you _____ for breakfast?

3. Does Fangfang like English food?（作否定回答）

_____, _____.

4. What did Lingling have for lunch?



_____.

八、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

My name is Wang Hai. Today I had two sandwiches and some milk for lunch. I like sandwiches very much. But my mum doesn't like sandwiches at all. She had dumplings for lunch. She likes Chinese food very much. Tomorrow is my birthday. My mum is going to buy a big cake for me. She will cook lots of Chinese food. I'm going to eat delicious Chinese food. I am happy.

(　　) 1. Wang Hai ate a sandwich for lunch today.

(　　) 2. Wang Hai's mother likes Chinese food very much.

(　　) 3. Wang Hai's mother is going to make a cake for him.

(　　) 4. Wang Hai is going to eat lots of delicious food tomorrow.

(　　) 5. Tomorrow is Wang Hai's birthday.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Sam ate four hamburgers.

☞(答案见 105 页)

一、核心素养练

弄清字母组合的发音,有助于我们读记单词。请你读一读下列单词,找出画线部分与所给单词画线部分发音一致的单词并写在横线上。

wear teacher pear bread hear meat
meet near sweater here there breakfast

where:_____

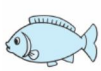
ear:_____

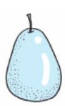
head:_____

see:_____

二、核心素养练

运用变一变的方式,可以拓展我们的思维能力,帮助我们记忆英文中形似的单词。你能改变下列单词中的一个字母,使之成为图片所示的单词吗?试一试吧!

1. dish—_____ 

2. bear—_____ 

3. nice—_____ 

4. food—_____ 

5. book—_____ 

6. meet—_____ 

7. live—_____ 

8. right—_____ 

三、单项选择。

( )1. Sam _____ hamburgers very much.
A. likes B. liking C. like

( )2. Tomorrow Mum _____ cook Chinese food for us.
A. wants B. is going to
C. will going to

( )3. Lingling gave her apples _____ Jack.
A. to B. from C. for

( )4. —_____ Amy miss her grandma?
—No, she doesn't.
A. Do B. Did C. Does

( )5. —Who wrote a letter to your brother?
—_____
A. Yes, she did. B. I had two eggs.
C. Daming did.

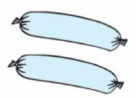
四、看图片,选出与图意相符的句子。

( )1. 
A. I ate two apples last night.
B. I ate two hamburgers last night.

( )2. .
A. Mum is going to cook dumplings for us.
B. Mum is going to cook noodles for us.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )3. 

A. He likes sausages very much.

B. He likes sandwiches very much.

( )4. 

A. She had eggs and milk for breakfast.

B. I had fish and chips for breakfast.

( )5. 

A. Mum bought some pears yesterday.

B. I gave some oranges to my friend.

五、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. I've _____(get) an email from my uncle.
2. I _____(give) my apple to Tom yesterday.
3. Mum is going to _____(cook) Chinese food for Lingling tonight.
4. What did Daming _____(have) for dinner?
5. Sam _____(eat) four hamburgers at school yesterday.
6. My father is in England. He _____(miss) Chinese food.

六、给下列句子匹配恰当的答语，将序号填在题前括号里。 【问答结合法】

A. Yes, she did.
B. I'm going to make a cake.
C. No, he doesn't.
D. I ate two hamburgers.
E. I had some eggs and milk.

( )1. How many hamburgers did you eat?

( )2. Does he like fish?

( )3. What are you going to do?

( )4. Did she learn English?

( )5. What did you have for breakfast?

七、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Dear Lucy,

Today I had a hamburger for breakfast. I like hamburgers very much. But my mum doesn't like hamburgers at all. She had juice and noodles. Tomorrow is my birthday. My mum is going to make a cake for me. She is going to cook lots of delicious food, such as fish and chips, meat, soup and salad. I hope you will come to my birthday party.

With love,

Danny

( )1. This letter is from _____.

A. Danny B. Lucy

C. Danny's mother

( )2. Danny had a hamburger for _____.

A. breakfast B. lunch C. dinner

( )3. Danny's mother had _____ and noodles.

A. milk B. Coke C. juice

( )4. _____ is Danny's birthday.

A. Tomorrow B. Next Sunday

C. Next week

( )5. Danny's mum is going to _____ for Danny.

A. make a kite B. make dumplings

C. make a cake

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 3 能力过关练 ☞(答案见105页)

听说专练

听力训练

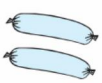
一、听录音，圈出与你所听内容相符的选项。【关键词对应图片法】

1. A.  B. 

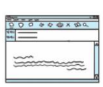
2. A.  B. 

3. A.  B. 

4. A.  B. 

5. A.  B. 

二、听录音，根据所听句子的先后顺序给图片排序。

(　　)　(　　)　(　　)

(　　)　(　　)

三、听录音，选出你所听句子的汉语意思。

(　　)1. A. 埃米喜欢中餐吗？
B. 埃米喜欢英式食物吗？

(　　)2. A. 爸爸昨天买了一些苹果。
B. 妈妈昨天买了一些苹果。

(　　)3. A. 你午饭吃的什么？
B. 你晚饭吃的什么？

(　　)4. A. 昨天她吃了鸡蛋和香肠。
B. 昨天她吃了一顿英式早餐。

(　　)5. A. 她非常喜欢汉堡包。
B. 她不喜欢汉堡包。

四、听短文，选择与所听录音一致的选项。【三步两遍听音法】

(　　)1. I had _____ and milk at school.
A. eggs　B. bread　C. rice

(　　)2. My brother had sausages for _____.
A. lunch　B. breakfast　C. dinner

(　　)3. Jack gave his _____ to Tom.
A. apple　B. pear　C. banana

(　　)4. Feifei likes _____.
A. Chinese food　B. noodles
C. English food

(　　)5. Sam's mum is going to cook fish and chips _____.
A. tomorrow　B. tonight
C. tomorrow morning

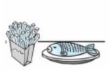
口语测评

五、看图片，回答问题。

1. What did you have for breakfast? 

2. What did you have for lunch? 

3. What did Lingling have for dinner? 

4. What did Mike have for lunch? 

5. What did Sam have for breakfast? 

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

读写专练

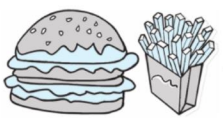
六、看图片，根据例子仿写对话。

例：

Lingling's breakfast

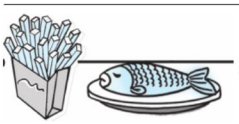
—What did Lingling have for breakfast?

—She had milk and bread.

1.  Amy's lunch

_____

_____

2.  Sam's dinner

_____

_____

七、补全对话。【联系上下文法】

Tom: Hello, Lingling. 1. _____

Lingling: Yes, I was.

Tom: 2. _____

Lingling: I had bread and milk.

Tom: 3. _____

Lingling: I had rice, fish and vegetables for lunch. I like Chinese food. It's delicious.

Tom: 4. _____

Lingling: I had noodles for dinner.

Tom: 5. _____

Lingling: Yes, I had an apple and a banana. I like fruit.

Tom: Me too.

A. What did you have for dinner?
B. What did you have for breakfast?
C. Were you at home yesterday?
D. What did you have for lunch?
E. Did you have any fruit?

八、阅读短文，根据短文内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。【信息定位法】

Yesterday was Sunday. Linda got up late. She had some eggs for breakfast. Then she went to the park with her brother and they had a good time. They got home at eleven o'clock. Mum cooked lunch. She helped her mother. They had rice, meat, fish and potatoes for lunch. They were delicious! She felt very full. In the afternoon she read some books at home. She had dumplings for dinner. She watched TV in the evening. Her brother Jim gave an apple to her. She ate it. She was happy.

(　　)1. Linda had two hamburgers for breakfast.

(　　)2. Linda went to the park with her brother.

(　　)3. Linda got home at 12 o'clock.

(　　)4. Linda had dumplings for lunch.

(　　)5. Linda gave an apple to her brother.

九、小作文。

玲玲家每天的饮食安排得丰富多样，请你结合下面的提示词写一写。（不少于30个单词）

提示词: Breakfast: eggs, bread, milk, apple

Lunch: rice, fish, vegetables

Dinner: noodles

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 4

Unit 1 Let's make a home library. ☞(答案见 106 页)

一、核心素养练

我们要掌握单词的拼写,并在合适的情景中运用。你能根据图片提示写出句子中所缺的单词吗? 【三步选词填空法】

1. 

2. 
3. 
4. 

5. 

6. 

1. We can use the _____ _____ to borrow books.
2. The boy is a _____. He goes to school every day.
3. Look! There are many books on the _____.
4. I often read books in the _____.
5. The _____ is helpful to us.
6. We listen to music on the _____.

二、核心素养练

单词的分类,有助于培养我们的比较能力和分类能力。请你从方框中找出下列单词的同类词,写在横线上。 【归类记忆法】

student found small dictionaries computers sent us asked sports them driver light dancer heavy him

1. got:_____ _____ _____
2. big:_____ _____ _____
3. me:_____ _____ _____
4. teacher:_____ _____ _____
5. animals:_____ _____ _____

三、选词填空。 【导学号 2271504】

to about on with in for

1. They're _____ the wrong place.
2. The books _____ Shelf B are _____ animals.
3. Let's put them _____ the CDs.
4. I've got books _____ students.
5. Now we can ask them _____ come.

四、单项选择。

( )1. These books are dictionaries. Let's put _____ on Shelf B.
A. their B. they C. them

( )2. My sister _____ a new kite _____ me yesterday.
A. send; to B. sent; to
C. sent; with

( )3. Let's _____ a birthday card for Li Ming.
A. make B. making C. makes

( )4. Mr Li asks us _____ English every morning.
A. read B. to read C. reading

( )5. There are many _____ in the library.
A. e-book B. dictionarys
C. dictionaries

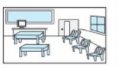
五、判断下列句子与图片是(T)否(F)相符。

( )1. We've got books for students.


( )2. Let's make a cake.


关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

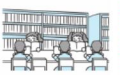
( )3. The books on Shelf B are about animals.



( )4. A friend sent me a dictionary.



( )5. They often read books in the library.



六、给下列句子选择正确的应答语。

( )1. Let's make a home library.

( )2. There is a CD.

( )3. What are these big books?

( )4. The computer books are not on Shelf C.

A. Oh dear! They are in the wrong place.
B. That's a good idea.
C. They're dictionaries.
D. Let's listen to music.

七、按要求完成句子。

1. We have got books for students.(变为否定句)

We _____ _____ books for students.

2. The books about sports are <u>on Shelf C</u>.(对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ _____ _____ about sports?

3. You can find it on Shelf B.(变为一般疑问句)

_____ _____ find it on Shelf B?

4. These big books are <u>dictionaries</u>.

(对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ these big books?

5. shelf, the, on, books, these, put, let's(.)

(连词成句)

_____

八、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

【关键信息搜寻法】

My name is Jack. There is a big library in my school. It's clean and bright. You can see many desks and chairs in it. And there are many different kinds of books in it. The books about English are on Shelf B. The books about science are on Shelf C. The books about maths are on Shelf D. The books about animals are on Shelf E. Where are the books about computers? They are on Shelf F. If you like stories, you can find storybooks on Shelf A. I like reading books in the library. I often read books in the library on Mondays. And I can borrow books from it.

( )1. —Where are the books about science?
—They're on _____.
A. Shelf A B. Shelf B C. Shelf C

( )2. —Where are the books about English?
—They're on _____.
A. Shelf A B. Shelf B C. Shelf C

( )3. —Where are the books about animals?
—They're on _____.
A. Shelf D B. Shelf E C. Shelf F

( )4. The library is _____.
A. small B. big and dirty
C. clean and bright

( )5. Can you find storybooks in the library?
A. Yes, I can. B. No, I can't.
C. I don't know.

( )6. Can Jack borrow books from the library?
A. Yes, he can. B. No, he can't.
C. Yes, I can.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 We can find information from books and CDs.

(答案见 106 页)

一、核心素养练

辨别英语单词中元音字母或字母组合的发音，能帮助我们读准单词。请你读一读，判断下列每组单词画线部分的发音是(T)否(F)相同。

( )1. A. right B. night C. eight
( )2. A. idea B. heavy C. teach
( )3. A. girl B. bird C. skirt
( )4. A. find B. dictionary C. library
( )5. A. shelf B. send C. them
( )6. A. field B. lie C. pie

二、根据图片提示选出正确的答案。

( )1. This big book is a (n) _____.



A. e-book
B. dictionary
C. map

( )2. Look at Tom's homework. The answer(答案) is _____.

$$\begin{array}{r} 23 \\ \times\ 2 \\ \hline 25 \end{array}$$

A. right B. wrong
C. heavy

( )3. We can find books about _____ in our school library.



A. music B. science
C. Chinese

( )4. This is a _____ for us to travel in Beijing.



A. topic B. project
C. guide

( )5. The books on Shelf B are about _____.



A. televisions B. radios
C. films

三、选出正确的单词补全句子。

1. Let's _____ (do/did) a project about science.
2. There's a guide _____ (to/for) us to visit the zoo.
3. Where can I find a book _____ (for/about) sports?
4. We can find information _____ (with/from) the library.
5. You can _____ (have/has) a great day.

四、单项选择。

( )1. I bought an _____ yesterday.
A. book B. card C. e-book

( )2. We can find some _____ on the Internet.
A. project B. information C. book

( )3. Here is a guide _____ us to visit Shanghai.
A. for B. to C. with

( )4. Tom is coming to my party. Are you coming _____?
A. also B. to C. as well

( )5. They went to the cinema and saw a _____ last night.
A. book B. film C. party

五、根据句意选择合适的短语填空。

gets information　　on this topic
did a science project　　make a home library
an English book

1. Where can I find _____?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

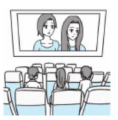
2. He _____ about planes from the computer.

3. The students _____ last week.

4. Let's _____.

5. I have many different ways to find information _____.

六、选出与句意相符的图片。

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

(　　)1. I want a Maths book.

(　　)2. Please put this CD on Shelf B.

(　　)3. Jack is going to see a film tonight.

(　　)4. —Where is my dictionary?
—It's on the desk.

(　　)5. We can get information from newspapers every day.

七、萨姆和大明正在图书馆里借书。请选择合适的单词将他们的对话补充完整。

【分析推理法】

here　library　Where　also　card　on

Sam: Excuse me. 1. _____ are the books about China, please?

Librarian: They're 2. _____ Shelf C.

Daming: Look! They're all 3. _____.

Sam: I think this book is nice.

Daming: And there is 4. _____ a CD in it.

Librarian: Can I have your 5. _____ 6. _____, please?

Sam: Yes. Here you are.

Librarian: Thank you.

八、阅读对话，选择正确的选项。

Sue: Where are you going, Ken?

Ken: I am going to the school library. There are many different kinds of books in it. We can find information from them.

Sue: I will go there, too. I can't find Amy. Where is she?

Ken: She's in the library. She likes reading books in it. She always reads books in the library after school.

Sue: Let's go together. I want to find a book about China.

Ken: OK.

(　　)1. Sue is going to the _____.
A. zoo　　B. park
C. school library

(　　)2. Amy likes _____.
A. reading books　　B. watching TV
C. dancing

(　　)3. Amy is in the _____.
A. classroom　　B. playground
C. library

(　　)4. Sue wants a book about _____.
A. China　　B. music　　C. science

(　　)5. Sue and Ken are going to the _____.
A. library　　B. playground
C. classroom

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 4 能力过关练 (答案见106页)

听说专练

一、听录音，选出你听到的单词。

【听关键词法】

听力训练

( )1. A. library B. information C. dictionary

( )2. A. dear B. here C. idea

( )3. A. read B. heavy C. way

( )4. A. card B. send C. guide

( )5. A. shelf B. film C. wrong

二、听录音，判断下列图片与你所听内容是(T)否(F)相符。

1. 

( )

2. 

( )

3. 
( )

4. 
( )

5. 

( )

三、听录音，给下列句子排序。

( )They're on Shelf A.

( )Well, let me help you.

( )But I can't find the book I want.

( )It's *How to Play Basketball*.

( )Where are the books about sports, please?

( )What's the name of the book?

四、听录音，补全句子。

1. Let's make a home _____.

2. There are many _____ to get there.

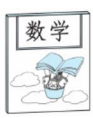
3. These books are in the _____ place.

4. That's a good _____.

5. These are the library _____ for the children.

五、看图片，仿照例子问答。

口语测评

例：

(Shelf A)

—Where can I find the books about maths?

—You can find them on Shelf A.

1. 

(Shelf B)

2. 

(Shelf C)

3. 

(Shelf D)

4. 
(Shelf E)

读写专练

六、读一读，找出对应的应答句。

( )1. Where can you find information?

( )2. What are these big books?

( )3. What's in your bag?

( )4. Where are the books about art?

( )5. Here's a book about science.

( )6. Let's make a class library.

A. Let's read it.

B. That's a good idea.

C. They are dictionaries.

D. My books and pens.

E. They are on Shelf A.

F. From books, films and e-books.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

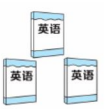
七、根据句意及首字母提示补全短文。

【句意填词法】

Mr Chen sent some 1. b_____ and CDs to the children. And now they are 2. m_____ a home 3. l_____. I think that's a good 4. i_____. They put the books about science with the CDs. They also have many dictionaries. These dictionaries are very 5. h_____. They have some books about 6. s_____, art, animals and computers. Look! These are the library 7. c_____ for the 8. c_____. Now they can 9. a_____ the children to 10. c_____.

八、看图，仿照例子写句子。

例：These are the books about English.
Let's put them on Shelf A.



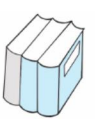
(on Shelf A)

1. _____
_____



(on Shelf F)

例：These are books. Let's read.



2. _____
_____



(listen to music)

九、阅读对话，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

A：Tomorrow is Amy's birthday. Shall we buy some things for her?

B&C：Yes. Let's go to the supermarket.

A：This supermarket is very big. There are lots of things in it.

B：Where are dolls?

C：Look! They are on Shelf E.

A：Where are pens?

B：They are on Shelf D.

C：Where are apples?

B：They are on Shelf H.

A：Are bananas on Shelf H?

B：No, they are on Shelf G.

(　　)1. Today is Amy's birthday.

(　　)2. They go to a library.

(　　)3. Dolls are on Shelf D.

(　　)4. Pens are on Shelf E.

(　　)5. Bananas are on Shelf G.

十、阅读短文，完成下面的表格。

Lingling, I am very happy you come to England. You can find information about English words in this dictionary. You can find train information from the computer. You can find information about the weather in this newspaper. You can find information about English history（历史）in this bookshop. You can find information about animals at the zoo. Wish you a good time in the UK!

English words	1. _____
2. _____	from the computer
the weather	3. _____
4. _____	in the bookshop
animals	5. _____

十一、小作文。

你们学校的图书馆一定有许多图书，你也经常去借阅吧！快向我们介绍一下吧。（不少于五句话）

Our School Library

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 5

Unit 1 It's big and light. ☞(答案见107页)

一、核心素养练

观察图片可以培养我们的观察能力。你能根据图意选择恰当的单词填空吗？试一试吧！

1. My bag is very _____.



2. The pencil is _____.
I want a new one.



3. This bag has got two _____.



4. It's nice to _____ a bike.



5. It's got four _____. It'll be easy to carry.



二、用所给词的反义词填空。

1. Her bag is _____ (heavy).
2. It's _____ (hard) for him to carry these books.
3. Look at his bike. It is _____ (old).
4. This is a _____ (black) T-shirt.
5. My grandma's house is _____ (big).

三、单项选择。

( )1. You can't take it _____ England.
A. with B. to C. for

( )2. I don't like this red bag. I like that blue _____.
A. a B. an C. one

( )3. English is easy _____ the little girl _____ learn.
A. for; to B. to; for C. to; to

( )4. I bought _____ a new book last Saturday.
A. he B. his C. him

( )5. The yellow pencils _____ broken.
A. is B. are C. be

四、根据句意选出正确的图片。

( )1. These shoes are new.

A.  B. 

( )2. This bag is heavy. She can't carry it.

A.  B. 

( )3. The pencils aren't new. They're broken.

A.  B. 

( )4. This kite is very nice. It looks like a bird.

A.  B. 

( )5. It's easy for the monkey to climb a tree.

A.  B. 

五、核心素养练

我们在使用英语时，要根据正确的情境，选择恰当而合理的句子。请你读一读，选出正确的句子吧。

( )1. 如果你是售货员，见到顾客时，你应该说_____
A. Can I help you?
B. How do you do?
C. What are you doing?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)2. 如果你想告诉别人你的衬衫上有两个口袋,你会说_____

A. My T-shirt has got three pockets.

B. My shirt has got one pocket.

C. My shirt has got two pockets.

(　　)3. 你打算买走某个东西,你会对售货员说_____

A. I'll take it.

B. Here you are.

C. Give it to me.

(　　)4. 当别人对你说谢谢,你应该回答_____

A. Don't thank me.

B. You are welcome.

C. Thank you very much.

六、连词成句。　　【穿针引线法】

1. kite　hard　fly　It's　to　a　(.)

_____

2. is　black　This　nice　umbrella　(.)

_____

3. new　buy　coat　a　I'll　you　(.)

_____

4. broken　My　blue　are　shoes　(.)

_____

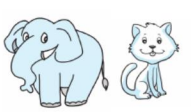
5. can　books　in　You　put　the　bag　your　(.)

_____

七、看图片,仔细观察,然后仿写句子。

例:The elephant is big.

The cat is small.



1. The girl is _____.

The man is _____.



2. The yellow pencils _____.

The blue pencils _____.



3. Mary's green bag _____.

Ben's red bag _____.



八、阅读短文,根据短文内容选择正确答案。

I'm Amy. My old schoolbag is pink. It's broken. I can't carry it to school. So my mother bought a new one for me today. It's blue. It's my favourite colour. It's big. And it's got four wheels. It'll be easy for me to carry.

It has got six pockets. I can put many things in it, such as books, notebooks, a pencil case, a bottle and an umbrella. I like it very much. I'm happy.

(　　)1. Is Amy's pink schoolbag broken?

A. Yes, it is.　　B. No, it isn't.

C. It's new.

(　　)2. Who bought a new schoolbag for Amy?

A. Her grandmother.

B. Her father.

C. Her mother.

(　　)3. What's Amy's favourite colour?

A. Pink.　　B. Yellow.　　C. Blue.

(　　)4. How many wheels has the blue schoolbag got?

A. It has got two wheels.

B. It has got four wheels.

C. It has got six wheels.

(　　)5. What can Amy put in her new schoolbag?

A. Many books.

B. Many books and a pencil case.

C. Books, notebooks, a pencil case, a bottle and an umbrella.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 It's too big for you. ☞(答案见 107 页)

一、核心素养练

英语单词拼读能力的培养需要我们掌握字母组合的发音规律。你能将每组单词中共同缺少的字母组合填在横线上吗？填好后请你判断该字母组合在每组单词中的读音是(T)否(F)相同。

ea　oy　ee　igh　oa　oo

(　　)1. b＿＿t, c＿＿t

(　　)2. ＿＿sy, h＿＿vy

(　　)3. c＿＿k, t＿＿

(　　)4. b＿＿, t＿＿

(　　)5. l＿＿＿t, r＿＿＿t

(　　)6. gr＿＿n, wh＿＿l

二、核心素养练

对单词进行合理的分类有助于我们在句子中正确地运用单词。请你读句子，并从方框中选出与句中画线单词同类的一项，将序号填入题前括号里。

A. T-shirt　B. take　C. lovely
D. blue　E. bird

(　　)1. Try this white one.

(　　)2. It has got a panda on it.

(　　)3. Look at my new hat.

(　　)4. But it's too big for you.

(　　)5. It's nice to ride a bike.

三、看图，用合适的形容词填空，完成句子。

1. This T-shirt is _____ for the monkey, but it is _____ for the panda.



2. The bag is _____ for the girl, but it is _____ for the man.



3. Playing basketball is _____ for the tall boy, but it is _____ for the short boy.



四、单项选择。

(　　)1. This bag is big, _____ it looks old.
A. or　B. but　C. so

(　　)2. _____ this white one, please.
A. Try　B. Trying　C. To try

(　　)3. The _____ girl is my little sister.
A. love　B. lovely　C. loving

(　　)4. It's hard _____ her to carry this bag.
A. to　B. with　C. for

(　　)5. My white kite is so _____.
A. kind　B. easy　C. nice

五、读句子，选择合适的介词填空。

for　with　at　on　to

1. Look _____ this blue T-shirt.
2. The schoolbag is nice. You can take it _____ school.
3. I like the red coat. It has got a dog _____ it.
4. Let's make a birthday card _____ him.
5. I've got a new coat _____ two pockets.

六、判断句子与图片是(T)否(F)相符。

(　　)1. The hat is too small for her.



(　　)2. Climbing the mountain is hard for him.



(　　)3. The bag is too heavy for her.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )4. The bird kite is big and light.



( )5. It has got a cat on it.



七、核心素养练

使用英语时，我们要根据情境，选择恰当的句子。请你读一读，选出正确的句子吧。

( )1. 周末你和妈妈一起逛商店，你看见一件白色连衣裙很漂亮，你应该说：

A. That white skirt is nice!

B. This blue shirt is big!

C. That white dress is nice!

( )2. 妈妈给你买的新帽子对你来说太大了，你应该说：

A. The cap is too big for me.

B. The cap is not big for you.

C. The cap is too small for me.

( )3. 你认为那个带轮子的黑色包很轻，你应该说：

A. That blue bag is heavy. It's got two wheels.

B. This bag is heavy. It's got two pockets.

C. The black bag is light. It's got two wheels.

( )4. 你想告诉同学自己的衬衫上有一只猫，你应该说：

A. I've got a cat.

B. It's got a cat on my shirt.

C. It's got a tiger on my shirt.

( )5. 你告诉老师你的铅笔断了，你说：

A. My pen is broken.

B. My bike is broken.

C. My pencil is broken.

八、选择合适的单词补全对话。

hard new small well easy

Lingling: Mum, I want a 1. _____ T-shirt. My old T-shirt is too 2. _____. I want a big one.

Mum: OK. Let's buy a T-shirt this afternoon.

Amy: Hello! What are you doing now, Ling-ling?

Lingling: I am drawing a picture for Dad's birthday. But I can't draw very well. It's 3. _____for me. Can you help me, Amy? You can draw 4. _____. It's 5. _____ for you.

Amy: Of course. I am coming.

九、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

I have a dress. It's old and broken. I'd like a new one. Today is a fine day. So I go to the clothes shop with my mother. We see many nice dresses and skirts. I want to buy a red dress. But it is one hundred *yuan*. It is too expensive(昂贵的)! So I choose(选择) a blue one. It's sixty-eight *yuan* and it fits(适合) me very well. My mother buys it for me. Then we go home by taxi together.

( )1. I'd like a new _____.

A. skirt B. dress C. sweater

( )2. I go to the clothes shop with my _____.

A. sister B. father C. mother

( )3. The _____ dress is too expensive.

A. red B. blue C. white

( )4. The blue dress is _____ *yuan*.

A. 68 B. 100 C. 86

( )5. We go home by _____.

A. bike B. bus C. taxi

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 5 能力过关练 ☞(答案见107页)

听说专练

听力训练

一、听录音，选出你听到的单词。

( )1. A. light B. night C. tonight

( )2. A. heavy B. very C. lovely

( )3. A. topic B. pocket C. broken

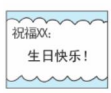
( )4. A. easy B. wheel C. try

( )5. A. cake B. make C. take

二、听录音，选出与所听句子相符的图片，将序号填在横线上。 【关键词对应图片法】

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____

三、听录音，根据所听内容选词填空。

A. lovely	B. nice	C. light	D. big
E. beautiful	F. dirty	G. small	H. new
I. old	J. fat		

1. Sam's bag is _____ and _____.

2. Mary's sweater is _____ and _____.

3. My cat is _____ and _____.

4. Tom's shoes are _____ but _____.

5. This kite is _____, but it looks _____.

四、听录音，判断句子正(√)误(×)。

( )1. My mother bought the dresses for me.

( )2. The green dress is very nice.

( )3. The green dress has got a monkey on it.

( )4. The black dress is long.

( )5. I like my dresses.

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例：Look at the bag. It's too heavy for her.  (heavy)

1.  (small)

2.  (light)

3.  (nice)

4.  (big)

六、看图片，描述特征，然后说一说。

例： (small/easy)

The bag is small. It's easy to carry.

1.  (big /hard)

2.  (nice/easy)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

读写专练

七、根据例句及图片提示写对话。

例：**A**：Is the bag heavy?

B：No，it isn't.



（bag/heavy）

1. **A**：_____

B：_____



（skirt/short）

2. **A**：_____

B：_____



（basketball/new）

3. **A**：_____

B：_____



（hat/big）

八、选择相应的句子补全对话。

Sam：1. _____

Mum：Really? Let's go to the shop. We can buy a pair of new shoes.

Sam：Thanks，Mum. Let's go.

Sales assistant：2. _____

Mum：Yes. I want a pair of shoes.

Sales assistant：3. _____

Sam：Blue.

Sales assistant：How about this pair?

Sam：They are very nice. 4. _____

Sales assistant：What size do you want?

Sam：Size 37.

Sales assistant：Try this pair，please.

Sam：This pair is great. They are nice for me.

Mum：5. _____

Sales assistant：Fifty *yuan*.

Mum：OK. We'll take them.

A. What colour do you like?
B. Can I help you?
C. Mum，my shoes are broken.
D. How much are they?
E. But it's too big for me.

九、阅读对话，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

【关键信息定位法】

Hello! My name is Sam. I like sports. I lost my old cap yesterday. I am going to a supermarket buy a new one with my parents.

Dad：Look at this black cap. It's nice.

Sam：I don't like black.

Mum：What about this white one，Sam?

Sam：It's 60 *yuan*. It's too expensive.

Mum：Have you got a cheap one?

Assistant：This white and blue one. It's only 28 *yuan* . You can try it.

Sam：OK. It's nice for me. I'll take it.

（　　）1. Sam likes singing.

（　　）2. Sam's old cap is broken.

（　　）3. Sam doesn't like the black cap.

（　　）4. The white cap is too expensive.

（　　）5. Sam has a new cap. It's white and blue.

十、小作文。

介绍一下自己的书包，可选用以下单词：

light；broken；heavy；big；small；hard

要求：不少于五句话。

My Schoolbag

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 6

Unit 1 I went there last year. ☞(答案见108页)

一、选出每组单词中不同类的一项。【归类比较法】

( )1. A. west B. moon C. south

( )2. A. interesting B. beautiful C. remember

( )3. A. holiday B. June C. July

( )4. A. went B. get C. stay

( )5. A. year B. week C. last

( )6. A. there B. parent C. grandma

二、核心素养练

单词的变换,便于我们记忆单词。请你想一想,改变所给单词的首字母,仿照例子写出一个新单词,并在括号里写出词义。【整体记忆法】

例:sent(寄出)→went(去)

1. mouth(嘴巴)→_____( )
2. where(哪里)→_____( )
3. hear (听见)→_____( )
4. noon(中午)→_____( )
5. rest(休息)→_____( )

三、读句子,根据首字母提示补全单词。

(注意用单词的正确形式)

1. Look at the m_____. It looks like a boat.
2. How did you g_____ there yesterday?
3. Children's Day is in J_____.
4. I'm sorry. I don't r_____ your name.
5. I went to Shanghai with my p_____ last year.
6. Gansu is in the w_____ of China.
7. I s_____ in Beijing for ten days last summer.

四、单项选择。

( )1. Can I _____ your photos?

A. see B. to see C. seeing

( )2. I _____ my friends in the park yesterday.

A. meet B. met C. to meet

( )3. My uncle lives in Hainan with his three _____.

A. child B. childs C. children

( )4. John has got _____ interesting books.

A. some B. much C. any

( )5. —_____

—By bus.

A. Of course. B. Where are you?

C. How did you get there?

( )6. Hainan is _____ the south of China.

A. on B. in C. for

( )7. Did you _____ with your parents?

A. go B. went C. going

( )8. I met my cousin _____ June.

A. in B. on C. be

( )9. —_____ did you go for your holidays?

—I went to Yinchuan.

A. Where B. When C. How

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

五、给下列句子选择合适的图片。

(　　)1. This is a photo of Hainan.

(　　)2. I got to school by car yesterday.

(　　)3. Beijing is in the north of China.

(　　)4. The mountains are really beautiful.

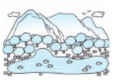
(　　)5. I went to England last year.

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

六、核心素养练

观察能力和运用语言能力很重要。请你仔细观察下面的图片，仿照例子写句子。

Beijing / 

例：Last year I went to Beijing and visited the Great Wall.

Qingdao / 

1. Last June he went to _____ and _____.

Shanghai / 

2. Last week we went to _____ and _____.

Nanjing / 

3. Last July she went to _____ and _____.

七、根据对话内容，选择合适的句子填空。

Amy：Hi, Tom. 1. _____

Tom：Hello, Amy. I'm fine, thank you.

Amy：2. _____

Tom：We went to Xinjiang.

Amy：3. _____

Tom：It's in the west of China.

Amy：4. _____

Tom：We went there in July .

Amy：5. _____

Tom：Yes, I did.

A. Did you go with your parents?

B. Where did you go for your holidays?

C. Where is Xinjiang?

D. When did you go there?

E. How are you?

八、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Hainan is in the south of China. It's not cold all year round. I went to Hainan with my parents in winter last year. It's cold in the north of China. But it's warm in Hainan. I swam in the sea and ate fish there. Hainan is a good place to go for the holidays.

(　　)1. Hainan is in the west of China.

(　　)2. Last summer I went to Hainan.

(　　)3. I went to Hainan with my father and mother.

(　　)4. It's very cold in Hainan.

(　　)5. I swam in the sea and ate fish in Hainan.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 She visited the Tianchi Lake.

(答案见 108 页)

一、读一读，圈出含有例词画线部分发音的单词。

1. door　I ate a hamburger this morning.
2. about　We live in a big house.
3. colour　They visited Beijing last Saturday.
4. horse　Yinchuan is in the north of China.
5. east　There are three books.

二、核心素养练

形近词中通常有相同的字母组合，将字母组合整体记忆，可以连锁记住类似的形近词。请你根据汉语提示，在圆圈内填入合适的字母组成单词。

1. 西方 — est — 休息 / 最好的
2. 湖 — ake — 制作 / 选择要 / 蛋糕
3. 家 — ome — 来 / 一些
4. 快的 — ast — 经过 / 上一个的

三、核心素养练

掌握单词词性和类别，并根据词性或类别记忆同类词，便于我们在句子中正确运用。请你选出与所给单词同类的一项。

(　　)1. lake
A. of　B. mountain　C. best

(　　)2. east
A. north　B. home　C. have

(　　)3. July
A. Sunday　B. China　C. June

(　　)4. panda
A. cute　B. horse　C. rest

(　　)5. climb
A. lovely　B. holiday　C. visit

四、单项选择。

(　　)1. Last week, Xiaoming _____ to Hangzhou with his parents.
A. go　B. goes　C. went

(　　)2. I'm going to Sichuan _____ July.
A. on　B. in　C. at

(　　)3. I'm very tired. Let's _____.
A. have a party　B. have a rest
C. have a picnic

(　　)4. Qinghai is _____ the west _____ China.
A. in; for　B. at; of　C. in; of

(　　)5. —_____ did you go last night?
—I went to the supermarket.
A. When　B. Where　C. What

(　　)6. These are some _____ of China.
A. photos　B. photo　C. photoes

(　　)7. We stayed here _____ a week.
A. on　B. for　C. at

(　　)8. What _____ they do yesterday?
A. do　B. did　C. does

(　　)9. —Did you go to the park yesterday?
—_____
A. Yes, I do.　B. Yes, I did.
C. I went there last year.

(　　)10. There are some _____ in Xinjiang.
A. horse　B. horses　C. house

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、给下列问句选择恰当的答语。

【问答结合法】

( )1. Where did you go for the holidays?
A. I had a lovely time there.
B. I went to Harbin.
C. It is very beautiful.

( )2. Where is Hainan?
A. It's in the south of China.
B. It's in the north of China.
C. It's in the west of China.

( )3. When did you go to Xinjiang?
A. I rode a horse in Xinjiang.
B. I climbed the Tianshan Mountains.
C. I went there last July.

( )4. How did you get there?
A. I saw some pandas.
B. Let's have a rest.
C. By train.

( )5. Who did you go with?
A. My sister is a driver.
B. My parents.
C. We stayed there for a week.

六、将下列句子重新排序，使之组成一段完整的对话。

( )What did you do there?
( )Yes, I did.
( )I went to Xinjiang with my parents.
( )We went there by plane.
( )Where did you go last summer?
( )I rode a horse and climbed the Tianshan Mountains.
( )Did you have a lovely time there?
( )How did you go there?

七、核心素养练

中国地大物博，不同地区天气气候不一样。比如冬天北方很冷，而南方依然很温暖。你知道下面这些城市在中国的什么位置吗？请根据实际情况回答问题。

1. —Where is Beijing?
—It's in the _____ of China.
2. —Where is Xinjiang?
—_____
3. —Where is Shanghai?
—_____
4. —Where is Nanning?
—_____

八、按要求完成句子。

1. We rode a horse in Xinjiang.（对画线部分提问）
_____ _____ _____ _____ in Xinjiang?
2. Yinchuan is in the north of China.（对画线部分提问）
_____ _____ Yinchuan?
3. Lingling is climbing the Tianshan Mountains.（改为过去时）
Lingling _____ _____ _____ _____ last July.
4. Where did you go for the holidays?（用 Beijing 回答）
_____
5. She had a lovely time.（改为一般疑问句）
_____

九、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Last summer I went to Qingdao. Qingdao is in the east of China. I went there with my mother and my grandma. The weather there was very hot. I swam in the sea every day. We ate lots of fish. We had a lovely time there.

( )1. I went to Qingdao with my parents.
( )2. The weather was cold in Qingdao last summer.
( )3. I swam in the sea every day.
( )4. I ate lots of fruit there.
( )5. I had a lovely time there.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 6 能力过关练 ☞(答案见108页)

听说专练

听力训练

一、听录音，根据所听内容给下列图片排序。


( )


( )


( )


( )


( )

二、听录音，判断下列句子与所听内容是（T）否（F）一致。

( )1. Look! Lily has got some post cards.

( )2. Last year I went to Xinjiang with my parents.

( )3. They are photos of China.

( )4. It's in the south of Shandong.

( )5. My cousins visit here every year.

三、听录音，选出你所听到句子的汉语意思。

【对比听音法】

( )1. A. 去年七月我去了新疆。
B. 去年六月我去了新疆。

( )2. A. 它在中国的南部。
B. 它在中国的北部。

( )3. A. 我的堂兄弟每年都去游览北京。
B. 我的堂兄弟去年游览了北京。

( )4. A. 你和你的父母一起去的吗?
B. 你和你的祖父母一起去的吗?

( )5. A. 我在这儿玩得很愉快。
B. 我在那儿玩得很愉快。

四、听录音，根据所听内容选择正确答案。

( )1. Last summer, Lily went to Qingdao with her _____.
A. cousins B. parents C. friends

( )2. They went there by _____.
A. train B. plane C. taxi

( )3. The weather was not very _____.
A. warm B. cold C. hot

( )4. They ate lots of _____.
A. fruit B. fish C. vegetables

( )5. They stayed in Qingdao for _____ days.
A. three B. six C. eight

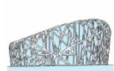
五、根据表格信息，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例：Sam went to Yunnan last June.
He went there with his parents.

Name	Sam	Lingling	Daming
Place	Yunnan	Hainan	Hangzhou
Time	last June	last year	last July
Who	his parents	her uncle	his mother

六、看图片，仿照例子说一说。

例：
Fangfang went to Beijing. It's in the north of China.
Fangfang/Beijing

1. 
Jim/Shanghai

2. 
Lingling/Chengdu

3. 
Amy/Hainan

4. 

Daming/Harbin

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

读写专练

七、根据上下文提示补全对话。

A: 1. _____ did you go for the holidays, Lingling?

B: I 2. _____ to Xinjiang.

A: Did you go 3. _____ your parents?

B: Yes, I 4. _____.

A: When 5. _____ you go there?

B: We went there 6. _____ July.

A: What did you 7. _____ there?

B: We 8. _____ horses and 9. _____ the Tianshan Mountains.

A: Oh, that sounds great!

B: Yes, we had a lovely 10. _____ there.

八、连词成句。

1. you with did go sister your (?)

_____

2. stayed for we my two grandmother days with (.)

_____

3. last I visited year friend my (.)

_____

4. in of are they China west the (.)

_____

5. there did how you go (?)

_____

九、完形填空。 【导学号 2271504】

My name is Mary. I went to Beijing 1. _____ my parents last summer holidays. Beijing is in the 2. _____ of China. It has lots of places of interest. I 3. _____ the Great Wall and took many 4. _____. I 5. _____ went to Tian'anmen Square. It is very beautiful. We stayed there 6. _____ a week. We had a lovely time there.

( )1. A. and B. with C. but

( )2. A. south B. west C. north

( )3. A. visited B. visit C. visiting

( )4. A. maps B. photos C. cards

( )5. A. too B. to C. also

( )6. A. for B. at C. in

十、阅读短文，判断正（T）误（F）。

Hello! I'm Maomao. I went to Dalian with my parents last year. We went there by ship. I visited my grandpa's farm. It was very interesting. There were many animals on the farm. And I rode a horse. I visited my uncle too. My friend Xiaoqiang went to Hainan. It's in the south of China. He went swimming in the sea. This summer, Xiaoqiang is going to Dalian with me.

( )1. Xiaoqiang went to Dalian last year.

( )2. Maomao rode a horse on his grandpa's farm.

( )3. Maomao and his parents went to Dalian by train.

( )4. Xiaoqiang went swimming in the sea in Hainan.

( )5. Xiaoqiang is going to Dalian with Maomao next summer.

十一、小作文。

以"My Favourite Place"为题，写一篇50词左右的小作文。请用一般过去时描述你曾经在这个地方的活动。

提示词: east (west; north; south); go; visit; stay; climb; take; ride

My Favourite Place

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 7

Unit 1 My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning.

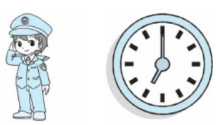
☞(答案见109页)

一、读单词，并在后面写出一个同类词。

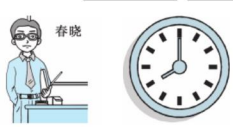
1. morning　　afternoon　　_____
2. easy　　late　　_____
3. policeman　　driver　　_____
4. park　　school　　_____
5. five　　eleven　　_____
6. brother　　sister　　_____

二、核心素养练

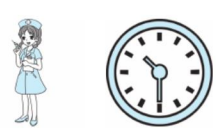
观察图片内容，根据语境准确地用英语表达图片的意思，能提高我们的语言运用能力。根据图片提示，将下面的句子补充完整。



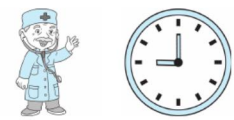
1. My uncle is a _____.
   He goes to work at _____ _____.



2. Mr Smart is a teacher.
   He _____ _____ _____ at eight o'clock.



3. Liu Xin is a _____.
   She goes to work _____ _____ _____ _____ every night.



4. Mr Li is a doctor.
   He goes to work at _____ o'clock _____ morning.



5. My uncle is _____ _____ _____.
   _____ goes to work at _____ o'clock every morning.

三、单项选择。

(　　)1. What _____ she _____?
A. does; doing　　B. do; do
C. does; do

(　　)2. My parents _____ TV every day.
A. watches　　B. watch　　C. watching

(　　)3. Tom will do his homework _____ seven o'clock.
A. at　　B. in　　C. for

(　　)4. Daming _____ to school at eight o'clock every morning.
A. is going　　B. goes　　C. go

(　　)5. Her father works _____ a factory.
A. on　　B. of　　C. in

(　　)6. It's half _____ nine now.
A. at　　B. past　　C. pass

(　　)7. Will you _____ me to school, Mum?
A. took　　B. take　　C. takes

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )8. Mr Wang goes to work _____ seven o'clock every day.
A. in B. on C. at

( )9. —His mother goes to work at eleven o'clock every night.
—_____
A. That's right. B. That's very early.
C. That's very late.

( )10. —What does your father do?
—_____
A. He's a policeman.
B. She's a doctor.
C. She's a driver.

四、核心素养练

生活中，听懂别人提出的问题，然后准确回答，能提高我们的英语交际能力。请你读一读下面的对话，给问句选择合适的答语。

【问答结合法】

Mike: Hi, Linda. Who is that young lady?
Linda: 1. _____
Mike: Where does she work?
Linda: 2. _____
Mike: What does your mother do?
Linda: 3. _____
Mike: When does she go to work?
Linda: 4. _____
Mike: How does she go to work?
Linda: 5. _____

A. She goes to work by bus.
B. She works in a hospital.
C. She is my mother.
D. She goes to work at half past seven every morning.
E. She is a nurse.

五、连词成句。

1. father a Mike's driver is bus (.)
_____

2. does your do mother what (?)
_____

3. take there I'll two at you o'clock (.)
_____

4. to every at he goes morning six work (.)
_____

5. worker a he factory in is a (.)
_____

六、阅读短文，根据短文内容选择恰当的选项。

My name is Billy. I'm a boy. I am eleven. I'm in China now. My father is a doctor and my mother is a teacher. They go to work at half past seven. I go to school at half past seven too. So we go out together. I like Chinese food. But my parents don't. They like bread. I have a nice room. There's a bed, a desk and a chair in it. There are many books on the desk. I like books. I often read books in the evening.

( ) 1. Billy is _____.
A. a boy B. eleven
C. in China D. A, B and C

( ) 2. Billy's father is _____.
A. a teacher B. a doctor
C. Chinese D. a worker

( ) 3. Billy likes _____.
A. Chinese B. Chinese food
C. bread D. English

( ) 4. Billy has a _____ room.
A. nice B. big
C. small D. good

( )5. Billy often reads books _____.
A. at home B. after class
C. in the evening D. at school

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 I'll be home at seven o'clock.

☞(答案见 109 页)

一、核心素养练

单词拼读能力的培养必须将字母与读音相联系。单个辅音字母的读音容易掌握,字母组合在单词中的发音也有规律可循。

请你读下面的单词,找找规律,然后写一写。

1. watch lunch much tea_____
2. black back sock clo_____
3. knife knee knock _____ow
4. worker summer farmer quart____

二、根据图片提示完成句子。




1. It's _____ _____ now.
   We're going to _____ at twenty to eight.




2. It's _____ o'clock in the morning. They're going to _____ _____ at eight o'clock.




3. It's a quarter _____ _____ in the afternoon.
   I'm going to _____ _____ at six o'clock.




4. It's _____ _____ _____ now.
   She's going to _____ at nine o'clock.

三、单项选择。

(　　)1. School _____ at eight o'clock.
A. start　　B. starts　　C. starting

(　　)2. It's a quarter _____ seven.
A. to　　B. in　　C. at

(　　)3. My father will _____ home at five o'clock.
A. be　　B. am　　C. is

(　　)4. It's six o'clock _____ the morning now.
A. at　　B. on　　C. in

(　　)5. —_____ do you get up?
—At half past six.
A. What colour　　B. How many
C. What time

(　　) 6. —_____ you be home at seven?
—Yes, I will.
A. Are　　B. Do　　C. Will

四、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. Hurry up! The party will _____(start) at six o'clock.
2. I _____(go) home very late last night.
3. Don't _____(worry)! I can help you.
4. My mother _____(get) up early every morning.
5. Mr Li goes to _____(work) at half past seven.

五、给下列问句选择相应的答语。

(　　)1. What does your mother do?
(　　)2. Will you be home at six o'clock?
(　　)3. What time will you be home?
(　　)4. Do you get up at six o'clock?
(　　)5. What time does your sister get up?

A. She gets up at half past six.
B. She's a dancer.
C. Yes, I will.
D. Yes, I do.
E. I 'll be home at half past five.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

六、连词成句。

1. starts at school o'clock eight (.)

_____

2. time what your go school to does sister (?)

_____

3. you do bed go to at nine every evening o'clock (?)

_____

4. be home I will eight at o'clock (.)

_____

5. going to be you are late (?)

_____

七、阅读短文，判断图片是（T）否（F）与之相符。

Hi, I am Li Hua. I get up at half past six. I have breakfast at seven o'clock. I go to school at half past seven. I go home at a quarter to five. I have dinner at six o'clock. I go to bed at half past eight.


1. (　　)


2. (　　)


3. (　　)


4. (　　)

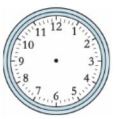

5. (　　)


6. (　　)

八、核心素养练

用数字或画图表达英语时间的方式，直观具体、生动形象，有助于提高学生学习英语的能力。阅读短文，根据短文内容画出 Tom 一家回到家的时间，并写出来。

Tom is at school now. He will be home at five. His mother is at the supermarket. She is shopping. She will be home at half past five. His father is at work. He will be home one hour later than（比……迟）Tom. Sam is playing football. He will be home at a quarter to six.


Tom


Dad


Sam


Mum

Tom: _____ : _____　　Dad: _____ : _____

Sam: _____ : _____　　Mum: _____ : _____

九、读对话，根据对话内容将句子补充完整。

A: Hello, Xiaohua. What time does your father go to work?

B: He goes to work at six o'clock every morning.

A: That's early. What does he do?

B: He is a taxi driver.

A: Will he be home at five o'clock?

B: No, he won't. He will be home at seven o'clock.

A: Xiaohua, what time does your mother go to work?

B: She goes to work at a quarter to eight every morning.

A: What does she do?

B: She is a doctor.

A: Will she be home at five o'clock?

B: No, she won't. She will be home at half past six.

1. Xiaohua's father is a _____.
   He goes to work at _____ every morning.
   He will be home at _____.
2. Xiaohua's mother is a _____.
   She goes to work at _____ every morning.
   She will be home at _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 7 能力过关练 ☞(答案见109页)

听说专练

听力训练

一、听录音，选出你所听到的单词的汉语意思。

( )1. A. 早上 B. 中午 C. 晚上

( )2. A. 时间不早的 B. 容易的 C. 早的

( )3. A. 工人 B. 工作 C. 司机

( )4. A. 每一个 B. 一刻钟 C. 工厂

( )5. A. 非常 B. 担心 C. 可爱的

二、听录音，给图片排序。



( )



( )



( )



( )



( )

三、听录音，根据听到的内容判断正（T）误（F）。

( )1. My sister is in the zoo now.

( )2. My sister will be home at half past ten.

( )3. My brother is at school now.

( )4. My mother will be home at eleven.

( )5. My father is at home now.

四、听录音，根据听到的内容选择正确答案。

( )1. At _____ in the morning, Wang Lei does his homework.

A. 7:00 B. 8:00 C. 9:00

( )2. He _____ at half past ten in the park.

A. draws a picture B. goes swimming C. flies a kite

( )3. He has lunch _____.

A. at home B. in a restaurant C. at school

( )4. In the afternoon, he plays football with his _____.

A. brother B. friends C. father

( )5. He watches TV for _____ minutes in the evening.

A. 20 B. 30 C. 25

五、看图片，仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例：





—What does she do?

—She is a dancer. She goes to work at half past two.

1.





2.





3.





4.





关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

读写专练

六、阅读短文，根据短文内容连线。【信息定位法】

It is Sunday today. It's sunny. I don't go to school. I want to go shopping. I get up at half past six in the morning. I have some noodles and an egg for breakfast. I go out at eight o'clock. The shop is near my home. I go there on foot. Many people are in the shop. I buy a book. At twelve o'clock I go home for lunch. I have some vegetables and meat for lunch. I read the book at three o'clock in the afternoon. I eat some noodles and fruit for supper. After supper, I do my homework. Then I go to bed at a quarter to nine. I have a happy day.

1. get up	A. at 8:00
2. go out	B. at 12:00
3. have lunch	C. at 6:30
4. read the book	D. at 8:45
5. go to bed	E. at 3:00

七、阅读短文，选择正确答案。【理解题意法】

Uncle Wang works in a factory in Shenzhen. He usually goes to work by bike. It takes him five minutes to get there. He usually leaves home at a quarter to eight and he wants to work 10 minutes earlier. Today his bike is broken. He wants to walk there. Now he is having breakfast. Don't worry. It's seven o'clock. It's very early. He can get there at half past seven in the morning.

(　　) 1. What does Uncle Wang do?

A. He is a farmer.

B. He is a worker.

(　　) 2. How long does it take Uncle Wang to go to the factory by bike?

A. 10 minutes.　　B. 5 minutes.

(　　) 3. What time does Uncle Wang usually leave home?

A. At a quarter to eight.

B. At ten past eight.

(　　) 4. Will Uncle Wang be late today?

A. Yes, he will.　　B. No, he won't.

八、核心素养练

阅读能提高我们的理解能力，在阅读中思考分析判断，并根据短文内容回答问题，可以提高我们的语言表达能力。

请你阅读短文，回答下面的问题。

Hello, everyone. I'm Kate. Today is Sunday. I get up at half past seven in the morning. Then I have breakfast. After that I play in the garden. At twelve I have lunch at home. Then I play a game with Linda. At eight in the evening, I do my homework. It's a busy day!

1. What day is it today?

It's _____.

2. Does Kate get up at seven?

_____, _____ _____.

3. When does Kate have lunch?

She _____ _____ at _____.

4. Who plays a game with Kate?

_____.

5. Is it a busy day?

_____, _____ _____.

九、小作文。

你和你的爸爸妈妈都是做什么的？你们的作息时间都是怎样的？用英语介绍一下你们一家人以及你们的日常活动。不少于5句话。

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 8

Unit 1 Will you help me? ☞(答案见110页)

一、选出每组单词中不同类的一项。

( )1. A. paper B. pen C. put
( )2. A. make B. write C. word
( )3. A. good B. so C. great
( )4. A. aunt B. Chinese C. cousin
( )5. A. dragon B. boat C. panda

二、选择合适的单词填空。

China Chinese

1. The lovely girl is from _____.
2. The girl's mother is _____.

help helping

3. Thank you for _____ me.
4. Will you _____ me?

windy wind

5. The _____ blows(吹) the leaves(树叶) off the tree.
6. It will be _____ tomorrow.

三、选词填空。 【导学号2271504】

for about of on in

1. My grandpa lives _____ New York.
2. I'll make a paper plane _____ her.
3. What _____ playing football?
4. You can write your name _____ it.
5. —Can you help me?
—Yes, _____ course.

四、单项选择。

( )1. Tom _____ got a toy car.
A. has B. having C. have
( )2. Thank you _____ your help.
A. for B. to C. with
( )3. Tomorrow is my _____ birthday.
A. mother B. mother's C. mothers'
( )4. Let's _____ a kite for him.
A. makes B. making C. make
( )5. It _____ a great present.
A. be B. will be C. will is
( )6. His mother and grandma _____Chinese.
A. is B. am C. are
( )7. What present can I _____?
A. take B. takes C. took
( )8. It's a _____ dragon.
A. not B. China C. Chinese
( )9. My cousin will _____ this kite.
A. loved B. love C. loves
( )10. _____ it be windy tomorrow?
A. Is B. Will C. Are

五、选出与句意相符的图片。


A


B


C


D


E

( )1. He is going to visit his grandparents tomorrow.
( )2. Your brother will love this kite.
( )3. Will you play football tomorrow?
( )4. I'll make a paper plane.
( )5. I think he's got a toy car.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

六、核心素养练

图片可以帮助我们直观理解所要表达的意思，句子的正确表达可以提高我们的语言运用能力。看图补全句子。

1. Will you _____ _____ _____ with me?



2. My brother has got _____ _____ _____.



3. Will it _____ _____ tomorrow?



4. What _____ can I take?



5. I can write _____ _____.



七、给下列问句选择相应的答句。

A. Sorry, I can't. I'm tired(疲劳的).
B. Of course I will.
C. I'm going to see a film with my family.
D. What about a toy car?

( )1. What are you going to do this Friday?
( )2. What present can I buy for my cousin?
( )3. Will you do homework?
( )4. What about running?

八、连词成句。

1. birthday John's tomorrow is (.)

_____

2. can what take present I (?)

_____

3. will great be a present it (.)

_____

4. in will windy it Beijing be (?)

_____

5. sister love toy my will plane this (.)

_____

九、核心素养练

在一定的语言环境中，我们要学会根据上下文进行猜测，使句子符合逻辑。请你仔细阅读下面的对话，选择合适的选项补全句子。

Woman: Tomorrow is Children's Day. I want to 1. _____ a present for my daughter (女儿).
Clerk: How 2. _____ is she?
Woman: She's 6 years old.
Clerk: 3. _____ about a new bike?
Woman: She's got one.
Clerk: Er...4. _____ don't you buy a book?
Woman: Good idea! But 5. _____ kind of book?
Clerk: How about a picture book?
Woman: Sounds great.

( )1. A. bought B. buy C. buys
( )2. A. old B. long C. big
( )3. A. What's B. How's C. What
( )4. A. When B. Why C. Where
( )5. A. that B. there C. what

十、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Tomorrow is Sunday. My friends and I will do lots of things. Mike will go fishing with his grandpa. Mary will go shopping with her mum. Bob will play football. Jim likes swimming. He will go swimming. I'm going to visit the Great Wall. I will take some photos.

( ) 1. Tomorrow is Saturday.
( ) 2. Mike will go boating.
( ) 3. Mary will go shopping.
( ) 4. Bob is going to play football.
( ) 5. I will visit the Great Wall with Jim.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 I made a kite. (答案见110页)

一、判断下列每组单词画线部分的发音是（T）否（F）相同。

( )1. A. tell B. will C. still
( )2. A. along B. angry C. string
( )3. A. dragon B. paper C. make
( )4. A. think B. drink C. thank
( )5. A. field B. piece C. tie

二、选出每组单词中不同类的一项。

( )1. A. sky B. cloud C. will
( )2. A. drew B. swimming C. reading
( )3. A. stick B. paint C. string
( )4. A. tied B. paper C. made
( )5. A. word B. high C. beautiful

三、核心素养练

中国是制作剪纸的故乡，至今已有几千年的历史。你知道剪纸的制作过程吗？你能用英文介绍一下剪纸的制作步骤吗？

看图片，选择合适的短语补全句子。

A. put the paper-cut
B. a piece of red paper
C. drew a picture
D. cut the paper

1. She had _____.



2. She _____ on the paper.



3. She _____.



4. She _____ on the window.



四、单项选择。

( )1. How do you _____ a kite?
A. making B. make C. makes

( )2. There are some clouds _____ the sky.
A. to B. on C. in

( )3. Please draw a cat _____ a piece _____ paper.
A. on; of B. on; for C. in; of

( )4. What did Tom do _____?
A. yesterday B. tomorrow
C. next Sunday

( )5. I made a toy car _____ my sister.
A. on B. for C. to

( )6. _____ are you going to do?
A. Why B. What C. Where

( )7. My parents and I _____ my grandparents tomorrow.
A. are going to visit B. visited
C. visits

( )8. Where _____ you go tomorrow?
A. are B. will C. do

( )9. Will it _____ windy tomorrow?
A. is B. / C. be

( )10. Tingting _____ a paper plane for Sam yesterday.
A. is making B. made
C. makes

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、根据问题和所给图片选择合适的答语，将选项填在相应图片下的括号内。

【关键词对应图片法】

What did they do yesterday?

1. 
( )

2. 
( )

3. 
( )

4. 
( )

5. 
( )

6. 
( )

A. Li Gang rode a bike yesterday.

B. Wang Ning and Li Qiang went to the zoo yesterday.

C. Zhao Dong and his sister played table tennis yesterday.

D. Xiaohua read a book yesterday.

E. Tom did his homework yesterday.

F. Li Wei played football with his friends yesterday.

六、选出合适的单词补全句子。

1. I'll _____ (make/made) a cake for you.
2. She _____ (paint/paints) the picture.
3. Let's _____ (fly/flying) a kite together.
4. The _____ (China/Chinese) dragon is nice.
5. _____ (What/How) do you make a card?

七、核心素养练

思维训练不仅可以使我们的大脑更加聪明灵活，同时还可以提高我们分析和解决问题的能力。请按要求完成句子。

1. I'll go fishing tomorrow.（对画线部分提问）

_____ will you _____ tomorrow?

2. Will you wash your coat tomorrow?

（作否定回答）

No, _____ _____.

3. I'll make a Chinese kite.（改为一般疑问句）

_____ _____ make a Chinese kite?

4. Will you learn English?（作肯定回答）

Yes, _____ _____.

5. I will read this book.（写同义句）

_____

八、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

Tomorrow is Sunday. It will be sunny and warm. My family will go to the park. We'll have a picnic. I'll bring my kite. I'll fly my kite there. My brother will take his ball. He likes playing with his ball. Mum will take some food and drinks. Dad will take some books. He'll read books there.

( )1. Today is _____.

A. Saturday B. Sunday C. Monday

( )2. It will be _____ tomorrow.

A. sunny and warm

B. sunny and hot

C. windy and cool

( )3. I'll bring my _____.

A. ball B. kite C. books

( )4. Dad will _____ there.

A. play with his ball

B. fly a kite

C. read books

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 8 能力过关练 ☞(答案见110页)

听说专练

听力训练

一、听录音，选出你所听到的句子中含有的单词。

( )1. A. cat B. kite C. card
( )2. A. paper B. paint C. piece
( )3. A. China B. child C. Chinese
( )4. A. draw B. door C. drew
( )5. A. work B. worker C. word

二、听录音，选择正确的图片。【听关键词法】

( )1. A.  B. 
( )2. A.  B. 
( )3. A.  B. 
( )4. A.  B. 
( )5. A.  B. 

三、听录音，根据所听问句的先后顺序给答语排序。

( ) That's a good idea.
( ) Yes, it will.
( ) I made a kite for my brother.
( ) Of course I will.
( ) I'll go swimming tomorrow.

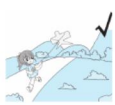
四、根据听到的短文判断正（T）误（F）。

( )1. It will be a holiday next week.
( )2. Sam will play with his friends on Tuesday.
( )3. Sam's father will go swimming on Friday.
( )4. Sam will visit his grandma with his parents.
( )5. Sam's mother will read books on Saturday.

五、看图片，根据提示仿照例子说句子。

口语测评

例：—Will you play football? √
—Yes, I will.

1.  ×
2.  √
3.  ×

六、看图，用英文说说制作风筝的过程。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 

读写专练

七、阅读短文，选词填空。

Can you 1. _____(made/make) a birthday card? Last Sunday 2. _____(is/was) my sister's birthday. I 3. _____(made/make) a

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

beautiful birthday card for her. Let me tell you how to make it. First, I 4. _____ (draw / drew) a picture on a card. My sister likes dogs. So I drew two cute dogs. Then, I 5. _____ (paint /painted) them. Next, I 6. _____ (write/wrote) some words on it. Finally, I 7. _____ (gave/give) it to my sister. She was very happy.

八、阅读对话，判断正（T）误（F）。

Tom: What are you going to do tomorrow?

Sam: I don't know. Any suggestions(建议)?

Tom: What about playing football?

Sam: I don't like football.

Tom: How about playing computer games?

Sam: But it's bad for my eyes.

Tom: Why don't you have a picnic?

Sam: That's a good idea. Thank you. Can you come with me?

Tom: Yes, of course.

Sam: Let's go at seven o'clock tomorrow morning.

Tom: OK. What are we going to take?

Sam: We are going to take some bread, some fruit and some juice.

Tom: Great!

(　　)1. Tom doesn't like playing football.

(　　)2. Sam thinks playing computer games is bad for his eyes.

(　　)3. They're going to have a picnic tomorrow.

(　　)4. They will go at eight o'clock tomorrow morning.

(　　)5. They will take some bread, fruit and juice.

九、阅读短文，完成任务。

Sally's grandfather lived with her. Every morning he went for a walk in the park and came back home at half past twelve for his lunch. But one morning a police car stopped near Sally's house at twelve o'clock, and two policemen helped her grandfather to get out. They said to Sally, "The old man lost his way (迷路) in the park and called us for help, so we sent a car to bring him home." Sally was very surprised (惊讶), but she thanked the policemen and they left. "Grandfather," she asked, "you go to the park every day. How did you lose your way (迷路)?" The old man smiled and said, "I didn't lose my way. I was just tired and didn't want to walk home."

(一)阅读短文，选择正确答案。

(　　)1. Sally's grandfather is _____.

A. old　　B. young　　C. tall

(　　)2. When does Sally's grandfather have lunch?

A. At twelve.　B. At half past twelve.

C. At one.

(　　)3. Sally was _____ when she saw her grandpa.

A. happy　B. tired　　C. surprised

(二)阅读短文，回答问题。　【导学号 2271504】

4. Why did the old man call the policemen?

_____

十、小作文。

春天来了，孩子们喜欢外出放风筝。你会制作风筝吗？快写下来与大家分享吧！

要求：语句通顺，不少于40词。

How do you make a kite?

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 9

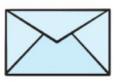
Unit 1 We laughed a lot. ☞(答案见111页)

一、读句子，根据图片和首字母提示填单词。

1. The girl saw a funny man. She l_____ a lot.



2. I've got a l_____ from my sister.



3. I went to the t_____ last night.



4. He is a famous a_____.



5. We had dinner in a r_____.



6. Look at those w_____. They are my teachers.



二、单项选择。

( )1. Yesterday I _____ hamburgers for lunch.
A. eat B. ate C. eating

( )2. There are three _____ under the tree.
A. man B. children C. woman

( )3. What _____ he _____ last night?
A. did; do B. did; did C. does; do

( )4. The actor told _____ jokes. We laughed _____.
A. lots of; lots of B. a lot; a lot
C. lots of; a lot

( )5. Are you ready _____ the exam(考试)?
A. for B. to C. of

三、选出与图意相符的句子。

( )1. 

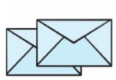
A. After the show, they went to a restaurant.
B. After the show, they went to a library.

( )2. 

A. Are they ready for the trip to the US?
B. Are they ready for the trip to the UK?

( )3. 

A. The men wore women's clothes.
B. The women wore men's clothes.

( )4. 

A. I've got two books in English.
B. I've got two letters in Chinese.

( )5. 

A. John played football yesterday.
B. John went to the zoo yesterday.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

四、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. Lingling _____ (wear) a beautiful dress yesterday.
2. My sister can write letters in _____ (English).
3. The _____ (woman) are going to the theatre tomorrow.
4. Daming _____ (tell) us a story last night.
5. The story is very _____ (fun).

五、连词成句。

1. told my of grandma jokes lots me (.)

_____

2. he to after park the show went the (.)

_____

3. love here theatre children the (.)

_____

4. week what they did last do (?)

_____

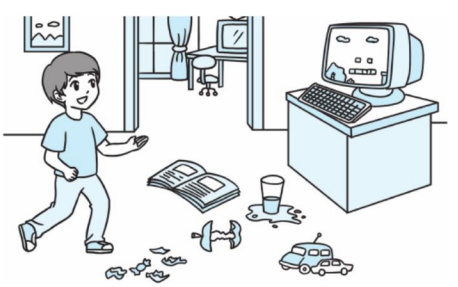
5. ready trip are to Beijing you for your (?)

_____

六、核心素养练

英语中，描述已经发生过的事情要用过去时，动词要用一般过去式。请你仔细观察下面的图片，根据提示词描述一下昨晚发生的事情。

What did Bob do last night?



1. watch TV

He _____.

2. eat an apple and some sweets

He _____.

3. drink milk

He _____.

4. play with toy cars

He _____.

5. read a book

He _____.

6. play computer games

He _____.

七、阅读书信，根据书信内容选择正确答案。

Dear Kathy,

We had no lessons on the weekend. There was a football match between China and the US last Saturday afternoon. I was going to watch it. My mother told me to do my homework first. At two o'clock, I went to Hongxing Sports Hall by No. 8 bus. How excited I was!

Love,

Linda

( )1. The children had no lessons on _____.

A. Friday B. Saturday C. Monday

( )2. There was a _____ last Saturday afternoon.

A. football match

B. basketball match

C. baseball match

( )3. Who was going to watch the match?

A. Kathy. B. Linda.

C. Kathy and Linda.

( )4. How did Linda go to Hongxing Sports Hall?

A. By bike. B. By bus. C. On foot.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Mum bought new T-shirts for you.

☞(答案见111页)

一、将下列单词按画线部分的发音归类。

quick	she	with	thank
those	think	ship	question

1. quarter: _____
2. English: _____
3. this: _____
4. mouth: _____

二、读单词，选出不同类的一项。

( ) 1. A. told B. wore C. ask
( ) 2. A. evening B. morning C. another
( ) 3. A. theatre B. soon C. restaurant
( ) 4. A. trip B. read C. laugh
( ) 5. A. question B. bought C. borrowed
( ) 6. A. bring B. forget C. history

三、核心素养练

理解和猜测能力在学习中能帮助我们掌握和运用知识。猜测时，必须以生活常识为依据。请你根据句意选择合适的短语填空。

borrow a book	listening to music
a book about Chinese history	
had a good time	in my room
in three days	

1. Lily _____ in Hong Kong last week.
2. Can I _____ from the school library?
3. The child is _____ now.
4. Dad is going to put another bed _____.
5. We're going to visit the London Eye _____ _____.
6. Did you read _____?

四、单项选择。

( )1. He can't play table tennis _____ all.
A. at B. on C. of

( )2. Mum _____ a bike for Sam yesterday.
A. borrows B. is borrowing
C. borrowed

( )3. Our teacher will ask _____ some questions.
A. we B. us C. they

( )4. Is there a letter _____ me?
A. to B. with C. for

( )5. Don't forget _____ your football.
A. bring B. to bring C. take

( )6. We can listen _____ the CDs _____ the evening.
A. to; in B. /; at C. on; on

( )7. She _____ read these books yesterday at all.
A. don't B. didn't C. doesn't

五、判断下列图片与句意是（T）否（F）相符。

( )1. I borrowed a bike for Jack.



( )2. Don't forget to bring some CDs of Chinese songs.



( )3. There's a letter for you.



( )4. Last week she went to Hong Kong.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )5. She ate hamburgers and chips.



六、给下列句子排序，使其组成一段完整的对话。 【分析推理法】

( ) Are you going to London?

( ) Where does he live?

( ) It's a letter from my cousin.

( ) He lives in London.

( ) What's this?

( ) Yes, I'm ready for my trip to London.

七、核心素养练

英语中当事情发生的时间不同时，句子所用的时态会也会发生相应的变化。过去发生的事情用过去时，现在发生的事情用现在时，将要发生的事用将来时。

请你看图片，仿照例句写句子。

例：

Yesterday they climbed the mountain.

Now they are climbing the mountain.

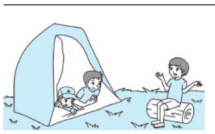
Tomorrow they are going to climb the mountain.

1. 

_____

_____

_____

2. 

_____

_____

_____

3. 

_____

_____

_____

八、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Dear Amy,

How are you? My dad and I are going to see you next week. Dad is going to buy a new bike for you. I also bought a present for you. But I can't tell you now. It's a secret(秘密).

I watched a TV programme yesterday. A boy wore his mother's clothes. It was very funny. The actors told lots of jokes. I laughed a lot.

I miss you! See you soon!

Love,

Sam

( )1. Who is going to see Amy next week?

A. Sam. B. Sam and his parents.

C. Sam and his dad.

( )2. What did Sam buy for Amy?

A. A new bike. B. A new bed.

C. We don't know.

( )3. When did Sam watch a TV programme?

A. Next week. B. Today.

C. Yesterday.

( )4. What did the boy wear?

A. His clothes.

B. His mother's clothes.

C. His father's clothes.

( )5. The letter is from _____.

A. Amy B. Sam C. Sam's dad

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 9 能力过关练 (答案见111页)

听说专练

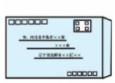
听力训练

一、听录音，判断你所听句子与图片是（T）否（F）相符。

1. 

（　　）

2. 
（　　）

3. 
（　　）

4. 
（　　）

5. 

（　　）

二、听录音，选出你所听句子的汉语意思。

（　　）1. A. 我借了一些书。
B. 我买了一些书。

（　　）2. A. 男人们穿着女人们的衣服。
B. 女人们穿着男人们的衣服。

（　　）3. A. 老师要问你一些问题。
B. 爸爸要问你一些问题。

（　　）4. A. 不要忘了带一些卡片。
B. 不要忘了带一些光盘。

（　　）5. A. 这封信来自英国吗？
B. 有我的信吗？

三、听录音，选出与你所听内容不符的一项。

（　　）1. I've got two letters in English.
A　B　C

（　　）2. Are you ready for your trip to the US?
A　B　C

（　　）3. After dinner we went to the park.
A　B　C

（　　）4. We're going to see you in three weeks.
A　B　C

（　　）5. I borrowed a book for you.
A　B　C

四、听短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

【三步两遍听音法】

（　　）1. The letter is from Kate.

（　　）2. Lily is in Shanghai now.

（　　）3. It is cold in Hebei.

（　　）4. Lily is going to see Kate next week.

（　　）5. Kate bought a red coat for Lily.

五、看图片，仿照例子说一说。

口语测评

例：I saw a dog.
It wore a coat.


1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

六、看图说一说。

1. I…yesterday.


2. Bob…now.


3. I…tomorrow.


关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

读写专练

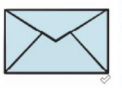
七、根据图片提示回答问题。

1. What did he do last night?



_____

2. Is there a letter for me?



_____

3. Did you have a good time?



_____

八、读一读，将对话补充完整。

Mary: Where did you go last weekend?

Linda: 1. _____

Mary: What did you do there?

Linda: 2. _____

Mary: How was it?

Linda: 3. _____

Mary: What did you do then?

Linda: 4. _____

Mary: Great! 5. _____

A. I ate a hamburger and drank juice in a restaurant.
B. I want to go there next week.
C. It was interesting.
D. I went to a children's theatre.
E. I saw *The Monkey King*.

九、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

My name is Fangfang. Last holiday, I took a long trip with my aunt. We went to Australia by plane. It was in August. We left(离开) Beijing on August 3rd. It was winter in Australia. But in Beijing, it was summer. I like there, because I like playing with snow. I went skating there and I took many pictures. I also bought many presents for my friends. I was tired, but I was excited(兴奋的), too.

(　　)1. Where did Fangfang go last holiday?
A. To the UK.　　B. To the US.
C. To Australia.

(　　)2. When did she leave Beijing?
A. August 1st.　　B. August 2nd.
C. August 3rd.

(　　)3. How did she go there?
A. By plane.　　B. By train.
C. By bus.

(　　)4. What did she do there?
A. She played with snow.
B. She went swimming.
C. She played with snow, went skating, took pictures and bought presents.

(　　)5. Was she tired?
A. Yes. But she was excited, too.
B. No, she wasn't.
C. I don't know.

十、小作文。

假如你是 Golf，给你的好朋友 Donald 写一封信，告诉他你上周在中国旅游的一些趣事。

要求：语句通顺，无语法错误，不少于五句话。

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 10

Unit 1 Where are you going? ☞(答案见111页)

一、根据图意选择合适的单词填空。

1. Mike is going to the _____ (airport/theatre).



2. Don't forget to bring your _____ (passport/ticket).



3. Are you ready for the _____ (party/trip)?



4. When are you going to _____ (get up/go to bed)?



5. That's a great _____ (idea/present).



二、单项选择。

( )1. Are you ready _____ your trip?
A. to B. with C. for

( )2. It will _____ all right. Don't worry.
A. be B. is C. was

( )3. Please make a list _____ things to do.
A. in B. on C. of

( )4. Where are you _____ this weekend?
A. go B. going C. goes

( )5. —Who's going to the shop with you?
—_____.
A. My mum B. I think so
C. Great

( )6. Amy is _____ to meet you in London.
A. going B. went C. goes

( )7. —_____ are you going to take?
—I am going to take some apples.
A. What B. When C. Where

( )8. —When are you going to the zoo?
—_____
A. By bus. B. Five.
C. At five o'clock.

三、读句子，选择合适的疑问词填空。

【问答结合法】

Who When How Where What

1. —_____ are you going tomorrow?
—I'm going to the park.

2. —_____ did Tom do last night?
—He did his homework.

3. —_____ is going to the airport with Lucy?
—Her mother.

4. —_____ is he going to take?
—He's going to take his football.

5. —_____ are you going to the theatre?
—At half past eight.

6. —_____ did you get there?
—By bus.

四、核心素养练

学习语言的目的是为了在生活中运用，请你根据下面的情景，选择恰当的语句。

( )1. 你已经为明天的旅行做好准备了，你会对妈妈说：
A. I'm ready for the trip tomorrow.
B. I'm going to the airport tomorrow.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)2. 朋友很紧张,你会这样安慰他:

A. That's funny.

B. Don't worry. It will be all right.

(　　)3. 你想知道朋友周末会去哪里,你会问他:

A. What are you doing this weekend?

B. Where are you going this weekend?

(　　)4. 你想知道朋友什么时候去学校,你会问他:

A. What are you going to take?

B. When are you going to school?

(　　)5. 朋友明天要去旅行,你会对他说:

A. Safe trip!

B. That's a good idea.

五、连词成句。

1. all be it right will (?)

_____

2. things make to of you list can a buy (.)

_____

3. to when you going are airport the (?)

_____

4. meet I'm in going Beijing to you (.)

_____

5. going Sunday where you this are (?)

_____

六、核心素养练

生活中多运用英语与他人交流,可以提高我们的交际能力。对于他人提出的问题,我们要理解后进行回答。请你根据所给提示,回答下列问题。

1. Where is Li Ming going this weekend? (England)

_____

2. When is he going there? (July)

_____

3. What is he going to do there? (visit the London Eye)

_____

4. How is he going there? (plane)

_____

5. Who will go there with him? (friends)

_____

七、阅读短文,根据短文内容选择正确答案。

Jim is going to Kunming on holiday. He will go there with his mum and dad. They will go there by plane. They are going to see folk dances. And he is going to visit the Stone Forest. They will stay there for a week. He hopes they will have fun there.

(　　)1. Jim is going to _____ on holiday.

A. Nanjing　　B. Kunming

C. Kunshan

(　　)2. Jim will go there with _____.

A. his mum　　B. his friends

C. his parents

(　　)3. They will _____ there.

A. fly　　B. walk　　C. take a taxi

(　　)4. Jim is going to visit _____.

A. the Stone Animals

B. the Stone Forest

C. the Stone Houses

(　　)5. How long will they stay there?

A. For a month.　　B. For a week.

C. For two days.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 I'm in New York now.

(答案见 112 页)

一、选出画线部分发音不同的一项。

( )1. A. who B. when C. where

( )2. A. write B. bring C. wrong

( )3. A. again B. arrive C. safe

( )4. A. ready B. speak C. heavy

( )5. A. about B. house C. nervous

二、根据图片选择合适的短语并用其正确形式填空。

have a party　　make Chinese food

speak English　　take photos　　take a taxi

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

5. 

1. She can _____ very well.
2. We _____ to the theatre yesterday.
3. The children are going to _____.
4. Do you want to _____ in the park?
5. Grandma _____ for me last night.

三、读句子，根据句意选词填空。

taxi　more　meet　passport　try

1. I'm going to _____ you at the bus stop.
2. We took a yellow _____ to their home.
3. Amy wants to _____ Chinese food.
4. I want to find out _____ about Qingdao.
5. May I have a look at your _____?

四、单项选择。

( )1. Lucy is _____ American. She is ten.

A. a　　B. the　　C. an

( )2. Everyone _____ Chinese in China.

A. speaks　　B. speaking　　C. speak

( )3. I want to travel _____ train.

A. on　　B. by　　C. in

( )4. You can't get on the plane without (没有) your _____.

A. present　　B. ticket　　C. letter

( )5. — _____ are you going?

—To the airport.

A. When　　B. What　　C. Where

( )6. There are lots of _____ on the street.

A. car　　B. people　　C. bus

( )7. I want _____ out more about the US.

A. find　　B. to find　　C. finding

( )8. Who met Daming _____ the airport?

A. at　　B. to　　C. of

( )9. I am _____ Wuhan now.

A. at　　B. to　　C. in

( )10. There are some _____ animals in the zoo.

A. easy　　B. funny　　C. sunny

五、判断下列句子与图意是(T)否(F)相符。

( )1. Danny is at the airport now. 

( )2. I want to try American food. 

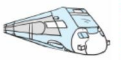
( )3. New York is very beautiful. 

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )4. The girl is singing a song.



( )5. They will travel by plane.



六、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. I will _____(write) to you again soon.
2. Tom's mother _____(arrive) in Beijing yesterday.
3. Simon is going to _____(meet) me at the station.
4. My cousin _____(speak) English every day.
5. There are lots of tall _____(build) here.

七、读一读，将答句对应的问句写在横线上。

1. —_____
   —He arrived there yesterday.
2. —_____
   —He is in America.
3. —_____
   —By plane.
4. —_____
   —His grandpa.

Where is Tom now?
Who met John at the airport?
How did you get to London?
When did Daming arrive there?

八、选择合适的句子补全对话。

A: Hi, Peter! Where are you going this summer holiday?
B: 1. _____
A: 2. _____
B: My parents.
A: How are you going there?
B: 3. _____
A: When are you going there?
B: Next week. 4. _____
A: I'm going to visit my grandparents in Henan. 5. _____
B: Thank you.

A. How about you?
B. I'm going to Shanghai.
C. I hope you'll have a good trip.
D. By plane.
E. Who's going with you?

九、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Dear Lucy,

I'm in Haikou now. I arrived here yesterday. My grandma and cousin met me at the train station. We took a green taxi to their house.

Haikou is very beautiful. It is very hot. And there are lots of trees and buildings here. Their house is near the sea. It is very big and beautiful. I can swim every day. And I can also eat the fresh fish. I feel very happy.

I love Haikou. I will come again soon.

Chen Hai

( )1. When did Chen Hai arrive in Haikou?
A. Today. B. Last Sunday.
C. Yesterday.

( )2. Who met Chen Hai at the train station?
A. His grandma. B. His cousin.
C. His grandma and cousin.

( )3. How did Chen Hai get to his grandma and cousin's house?
A. By bus. B. By bike.
C. By taxi.

( )4. Are there lots of trees here?
A. Yes, there are. B. Yes, it is.
C. No, there aren't.

( )5. Is Chen Hai happy in Haikou?
A. Yes, he is. B. No, he isn't.
C. Yes, he isn't.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 10 能力过关练 ☞(答案见112页)

听说专练

听力训练

一、听录音，选出你听到的句子。

( )1. A. I made Chinese food.
B. I want to try Chinese food.

( )2. A. I feel nervous.
B. I don't know.

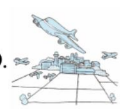
( )3. A. It will be all right.
B. It will be windy tomorrow.

( )4. A. We took a taxi to the park.
B. We took a bus to the theatre.

( )5. A. I'm going to play a game.
B. He is going to sing a song.

二、听录音，将人名和相应的图片连起来。

1. Meimei
2. Xiaoyong
3. Taotao
4. Tingting
5. Dongdong

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 
E. 

三、听录音，根据答语选出相应的问句。

( )1. A. Where is your mother?
B. Where is your father?

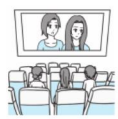
( )2. A. When did he arrive?
B. When is he going to arrive?

( )3. A. Where are you going?
B. What are you going to take?

( )4. A. What's she doing now?
B. What's she going to do?

( )5. A. Who met Daming at the airport?
B. Who's going to the airport with Daming?

四、听短文，根据所听内容的先后顺序给图片排序。


( )

( )

( )

( )

( )

五、用所给句型，根据表格提示进行问答练习。

口语测评

提示：Where are you going?
When are you going there?
What are you going to do?
What are you going to take?
Who's going with you?

Name	Amy	Lingling	Daming
Where	Guilin	Hong Kong	Mount Huang
When	7:00am	3:30pm	10:00am
What	row a boat	visit Aunt, go shopping	climb the mountain
Take	umbrella, ticket	passport, presents	shoes, clothes
Who	family	Mum	Dad

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

读写专练

六、根据图片提供的信息，补全对话。






A:Hi! Where are you going this holiday?

B:I'm going to 1. _____.

A:2. _____ are you going there?

B:At 3. _____ o'clock.

A:What are you going to take?

B:I'm going to take 4. _____.

A:Who is going with you?

B:I'm going with 5. _____.

A:Have a good time!

七、阅读短文，根据短文内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。

I'm Jenny. Last summer, I went to Beijing with my parents. We went there by plane. We visited lots of famous places and did lots of interesting things there. We climbed the Great Wall. We went to Tiantan Park. And we rowed a boat in the Summer Palace (颐和园). But we didn't go to the Great Bell Temple (大钟寺). There was no time. We also ate lots of delicious food there, like Beijing Roast Duck and Tanghulu...That was a wonderful trip!

(　　)1. Jenny went to Beijing last summer.

(　　)2. Jenny went to Beijing by train.

(　　)3. Jenny visited Tiantan Park, the Summer Palace and the Great Bell Temple.

(　　)4. Jenny climbed the Great Wall with her parents.

(　　)5. Jenny ate Beijing Roast Duck and Tanghulu in Beijing.

八、核心素养练

阅读时边读边划关键词的策略，能帮助我们抓住文章的关键信息。你能根据问题寻找文中的关键信息并作答吗？请你阅读下面的书信，回答问题。

Dear Mum,

How are you?

I'm very well in Shanghai. It's a beautiful city. I like the place. And I made a new friend. Her name is Huanhuan. She's got long and black hair. She's got big eyes. She is tall and thin. She's clever. But she is a bit shy. She likes English best. And she works hard. She often helps me. I miss you. I will be back next month.

Love,

Belinda

1. Where is Belinda?

_____

2. Who's her new friend?

_____

3. What subject does Huanhuan like best?

_____

4. When will Belinda be home?

_____

九、小作文。

明天上午11点大明将到达北京机场，他的表哥会去接他，然后他将游览北京。请根据以上提示描述一下大明的北京之旅。

要求:1. 语句通顺，表达清楚；2. 不少于5句话。

_____

_____

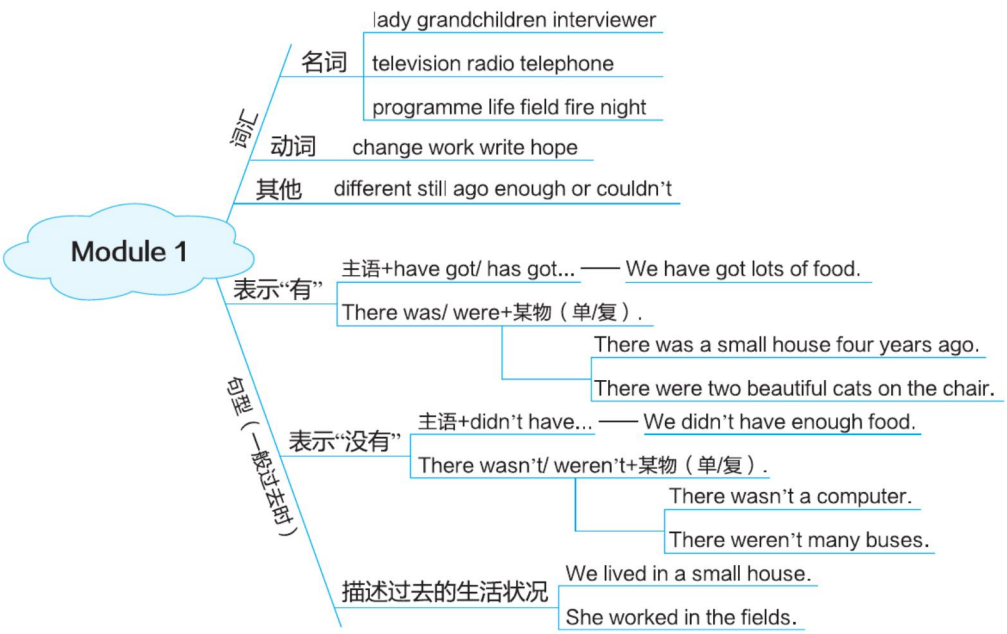
_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

期末复习训练 » Module 1 复习训练

知识导图



本模块重难、易错点提醒

1. There be 和 have/has 都表示有，但用法不同。There be 句型表达的是"某地存在某人或某物"，have/has 表示"某人拥有某物"。
2. or 在否定句中，意为"也不"；and 用于肯定句，or 常用于疑问句或否定句。

重难点过关检测 ☞（答案见 113 页）

词汇过关

一、读句子，圈出与例词同类的单词。

【比较记忆法】

1. worked

   She cooked on a fire.

2. radio

   The old man didn't have a telephone.

3. hope

   I miss my grandma.

4. year

   Where were you last night?

5. lady

   That woman went to Beijing three days ago.

6. enough

   He has got strong legs.

二、根据首字母提示补全句子。

1. L_____ was very different in China many years a_____.
2. There w_____ any cars ten years ago.
3. She worked in the f_____.
4. I h_____ you are well.
5. There a_____ lots of books here.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

6. I have e_____ food now.

7. That young l_____ is my English teacher.

8. I didn't w_____ at night. I watched television.

9. I can read and w_____.

句型语法过关

三、单项选择。

(　　)1. Be careful! The bus is _____.

A. come　　B. coming　　C. came

(　　)2. There weren't _____ computers many years ago.

A. much　　B. some　　C. any

(　　)3. Many things are different _____ the past.

A. to　　B. from　　C. of

(　　)4. He worked _____ England last year.

A. in　　B. on　　C. at

(　　)5. —What _____ you do last weekend?

—I _____ my homework at home.

A. did; did　　B. do; did　　C. did; do

(　　)6. I didn't _____ TV last night.

A. watch　　B. to watch　　C. watched

(　　)7. Let's talk _____ this question(问题).

A. with　　B. about　　C. at

(　　)8. There were no bikes _____ buses many years ago.　　【导学号 2271504】

A. and　　B. with　　C. or

四、读句子，选择恰当的介词填空。

in　on　about　for　of

1. We've got lots _____ food.

2. I live _____ a big house.

3. Thank you _____ your help.

4. She cooked _____ a fire.

5. It's a book _____ dogs.

五、连词成句。

1. lived　house　we　in　small　a　(.)

_____

2. have　she　a　computer　didn't　(.)

_____

3. talked　an　lady　life　her　about　old　(.)

_____

4. weren't　telephones　there　any　(.)

_____

5. worked　my　in　fields　grandpa　the　(.)

_____

综合运用过关

六、阅读短文，判断句子正(T)误(F)。

I like my school life very much now, because it is fun. Four years ago, there was a small playground. We couldn't play football in it. But now we have a big one. I can play with my classmates happily in the playground. We had four lessons then. But now we have six lessons. There weren't any computers then. There weren't any English classes or computer classes either. There are lots of computers in my classroom now. My favourite subjects are English and Computer. I can learn a lot at school now.

(　　)1. I like my school life now.

(　　)2. There was a big playground four years ago.

(　　)3. We had four lessons then.

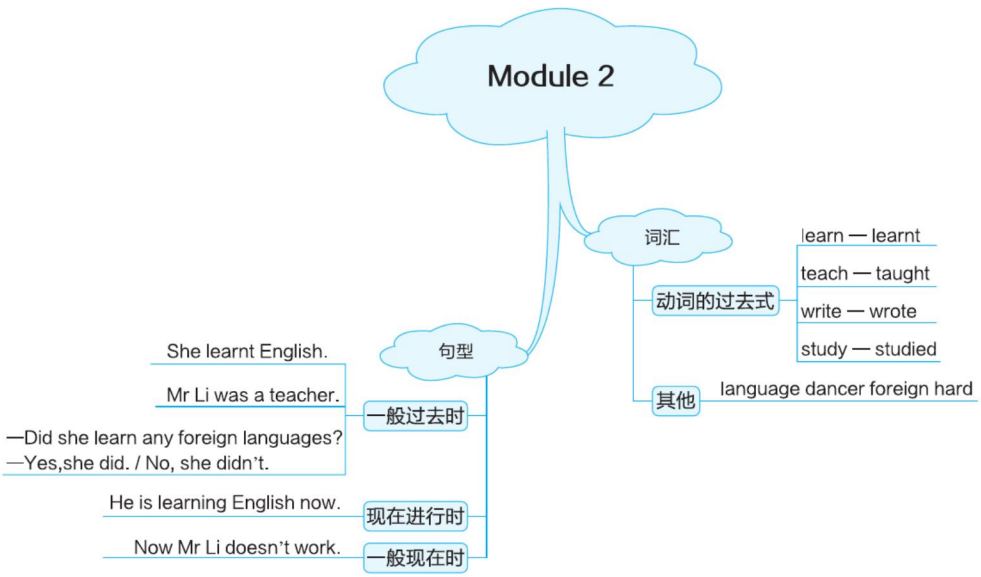
(　　)4. There weren't any computers four years ago.

(　　)5. We can have English and computer lessons now.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 2 复习训练

知识导图



重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 113 页)

词汇过关

一、找出每组中不同类的单词并在横线上补充一个同类词。 【归类记忆法】

( )1. A. China B. Science C. Maths _____

( )2. A. teach B. dancer C. doctor _____

( )3. A. studied B. go C. taught _____

( )4. A. learning B. cook C. working _____

( )5. A. wrote B. hard C. saw _____

二、看图，选择合适的单词或短语填空。

walked driver studying by bus
dancer watched TV

1. She was a _____ ten years ago.
Now she is a _____.


(ten years ago)


(now)

2. Last year he _____ to school.
Now he goes to school _____.


(last year)



(now)

3. Yesterday he _____.
Now he is _____.


(yesterday)


(now)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

句型语法过关

三、用所给单词的正确形式填空。 【时态判断法】

1. He _____(be) five then. He was a naughty boy.
2. He liked _____(walk) to school.
3. Mr Li _____(teach) Chinese twenty years ago.
4. When he was a pupil, he _____(study) very hard.
5. Now Mr Li doesn't _____(work).
6. Tom is _____(learn) Chinese now.
7. The young lady is a _____(dance). She can dance well.

四、给下列问句选择合适的答语。

( )1. Who are they?
( )2. Did your father learn English?
( )3. Is this your grandma?
( )4. What did she do yesterday?
( )5. What did she do twenty years ago?

A. Yes, she is.
B. She was a dancer.
C. They are my grandparents.
D. She washed her clothes.
E. No, he didn't.

五、连词成句。 【穿针引线法】

1. English did learn your grandma (?)

_____

2. now is Ms Smart Chinese learning (.)

_____

3. danced she in lots Chinese of cities (.)

_____

4. he an teacher English was (.)

_____

5. hard very studied Li Wei (.)

_____

综合运用过关

六、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

My name is He Huan. I am a good pupil at school. I study very hard. I have many good friends.

There are five people in my family. This is my grandma. She was a farmer before. But now she doesn't work on the farm. She is learning to dance now. My grandpa was a worker. He worked in a factory(工厂). Now he likes playing chess. My father is a taxi driver. My mother is a nurse. And she learnt a lot. She can cook, sing and dance. I love my family.

( )1. There are _____ people in He Huan's family.
A. three B. four C. five

( )2. He Huan's grandma was a _____ before.
A. farmer B. dancer C. writer

( )3. He Huan's grandpa worked in a _____.
A. school B. factory C. hospital

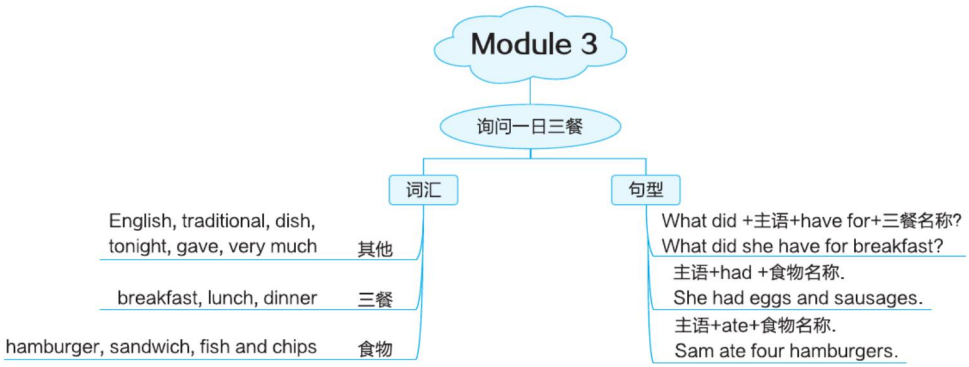
( )4. He Huan's father is a _____.
A. taxi driver B. bus driver
C. doctor

( )5. What did He Huan's mother learn?
A. She learnt to cook.
B. She learnt to cook and sing.
C. She learnt to cook, sing and dance.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 3 复习训练

知识导图



本模块重难、易错点提醒

1. eat 一般指吃固体食物，have 既可以表示吃，还可以表示喝。
2. 给某人某物用 give sth. to sb. 或 give sb. sth. 一般可互换。若 give 的直接宾语是代词，必须用 give sth. to sb. 的形式。

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 113 页)

词汇过关

一、读一读，找出每组单词中不同类的一项。

( )1. A. ate B. like C. gave

( )2. A. hamburger B. letter C. email

( )3. A. sandwich B. sausage C. juice

( )4. A. breakfast B. miss C. lunch

( )5. A. cook B. had C. say

( )6. A. delicious B. dish C. traditional

句型语法过关

二、单项选择。

( )1. This is an email _____ my friend.
A. from B. with C. at

( )2. We _____ eggs and milk for breakfast yesterday.
A. had B. have C. eat

( )3. —_____ did you have for dinner last Sunday?
—I had fish.
A. What B. Who C. How

( )4. It is _____ traditional English dish.
A. a B. an C. /

( )5. What does it _____?
A. said B. say C. says

( )6. Please give this book _____ Tom.
A. for B. with C. to

( )7. My father likes rice, _____ I don't like it.
A. but B. so C. and

三、读句子，用所给词的恰当形式填空。

1. I've _____(get) an email from Daming.
2. What _____(do) you have for dinner yesterday?
3. Mum _____(give) a banana to me. I ate it.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. Lingling _____ (say) she can run fast.

5. I _____ (eat) some noodles for breakfast yesterday.

6. Grandma is going to _____ (cook) noodles.

四、读句子，选择恰当的单词填空。

A. for	B. to	C. at
D. about	E. with	

1. Yesterday I had lunch _____ my grandma.
2. What did you have _____ breakfast?
3. We have breakfast and lunch _____ school.
4. This letter is _____ English food.
5. Sam gave a new pen _____ me.

五、根据答语找出对应的问句。

( )1. He ate three eggs.

( )2. I'm going to cook dinner.

( )3. Yes, I did.

( )4. She had sandwiches for lunch.

( )5. Yes, she does.

A. Did you have sausages for breakfast?
B. What did Lingling have for lunch?
C. What are you going to do, Mum?
D. Does Lingling like English food?
E. How many eggs did Sam eat?

六、按要求完成句子。

1. She had eggs and milk for breakfast. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ she _____ for breakfast?

2. Lingling likes English food. (改为一般疑问句)

_____ Lingling _____ English food?

3. He has a hamburger now. (改为过去时)

He _____ _____ _____ then.

4. I drank some milk last night. (用 tomorrow 替换 last night)

I _____ _____ _____ _____ some milk tomorrow.

5. My parents like fish very much. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ your parents _____?

综合运用过关

七、阅读短文，判断句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

Today is Friday. Amy had a pizza for lunch. But Sam likes hamburgers. So Sam had two hamburgers. Their parents had some sandwiches. Tomorrow is Saturday. They are all at home. Ms Smart is going to cook some delicious food. It's fish and chips. It's a traditional English dish. Sam and Amy like it very much.

( )1. Today is Saturday.

( )2. Amy had a pizza for lunch.

( )3. Sam doesn't like hamburgers.

( )4. Mr Smart and Ms Smart had some sandwiches today.

( )5. Sam and Amy like fish and chips.

八、阅读短文，将句子补充完整。

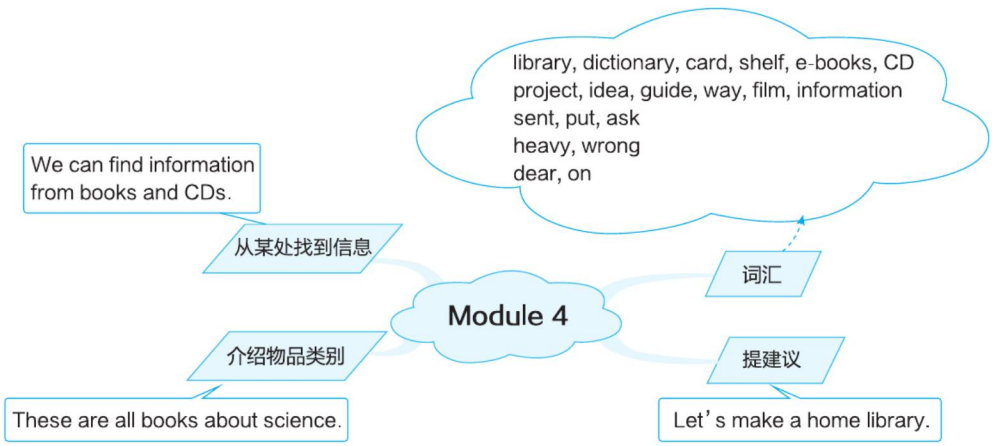
Hi, I'm Mary. I'm a pupil. I usually get up at six on weekdays. I have tea and bread for breakfast. I have two friends. One is Lucy and the other is Lily. Lucy often gets up at six thirty. She likes bread and milk. But Lily likes hamburgers and tea. She doesn't like milk at all.

1. Mary gets up at _____ on weekdays.
2. Mary has _____ for breakfast.
3. Lucy likes _____.
4. Lily likes _____.
5. Lily doesn't like _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 4 复习训练

知识导图



本模块重难、易错点提醒

由 let 引导的祈使句，动词用原形。

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 113 页)

词汇过关

一、读一读，找出每组中不同类的单词。

( )1. A. teacher B. student C. ask

( )2. A. library B. project C. school

( )3. A. Chinese B. English C. shelf

( )4. A. wrong B. idea C. heavy

( )5. A. dictionary B. put C. sent

( )6. A. film B. e-book C. find

二、读句子，选择恰当的单词填空。

A. find	B. make	C. want
D. got	E. put	F. ask
G. sent	H. dictionary	I. film

1. Let's see a _____ in the cinema.
2. Please _____ your books in your schoolbag.
3. I am hungry. I _____ some bread.
4. Where can I _____ information?
5. We can look up words in a _____.
6. Let me _____ a birthday cake.
7. My friend _____ a present to me last week.
8. I've _____ a new storybook.
9. We'll have to _____ someone the way to the station.

句型语法过关

三、单项选择。

( )1. My little brother can _____ a computer.

A. use B. will use C. to use

( )2. These books are very _____. I can't carry them.

A. easy B. interesting C. heavy

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )3. Miss Green sent a football _____ me yesterday.

A. to B. for C. at

( )4. Here _____ a book about science.

A. are B. be C. is

( )5. —Where are the books about art?

—_____

A. It's on Shelf D.

B. They're on Shelf D.

C. They are on the Shelf D.

四、找出句子中错误的一项并改正。

( )1. What(A) are this(B) big books(C)? _____

( )2. She sent(A) a book for(B) me(C). _____

( )3. Where(A) are the book(B) about sports(C)? _____

( )4. Let's(A) put(B) they(C) here. _____

( )5. We(A) can asked(B) him to come(C). _____

( )6. We can find(A) information in(B) books(C). _____

五、按要求完成句子。

1. I can find them on Shelf D. (改为否定句)

_____

2. You can find information from e-books.

(对画线部分提问)

_____

3. This book is about animals. (改为复数句)

_____

4. Mike sent me a book. (同义句转换)

_____

5. We can make a home library. (改为一般疑问句)

_____

综合运用过关

六、阅读短文，根据短文内容选择正确答案。

There is a library near my home. I often go there after school. It's about four o'clock. There are lots of books, CDs, newspapers and computers in it. We can read, listen and play there. Today I need to do a project about science. My classmates and I go to the library to find information from books and CDs. We can find information from newspapers and e-books as well. There are lots of different ways to find information on this topic. We have a great day there.

( )1. There is a _____ near my home.

A. supermarket B. park

C. library

( )2. I often go there _____ .

A. in the morning

B. in the afternoon

C. in the evening

( )3. —What's in the library?

—_____.

A. Food and drinks B. Toys

C. Books, CDs, newspapers and computers

( )4. Today I need to do a project about _____.

A. animals B. music C. science

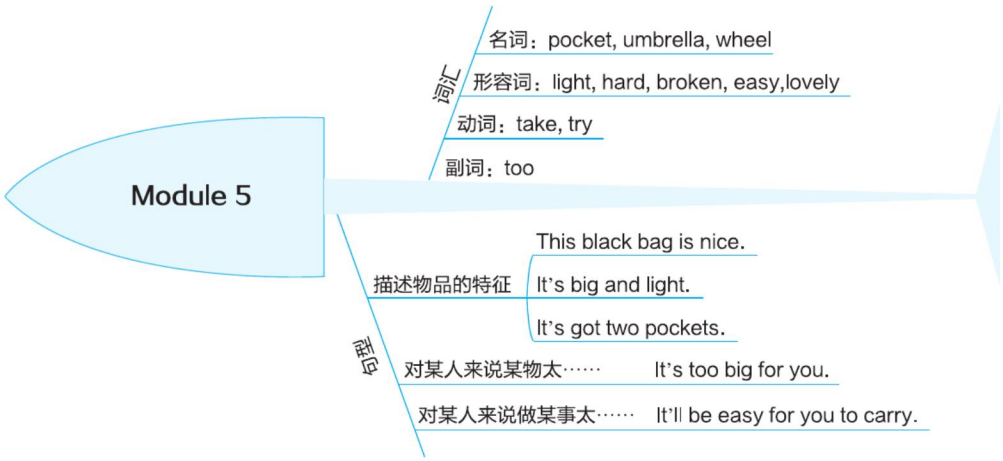
( )5. Today is a _____ day.

A. bad B. busy C. great

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 5 复习训练

知识导图



本模块重难、易错点提醒

1. it's got 是 it has got 的缩写形式，has got 意为“有”。
2. It's easy for him to learn English well. for 后面接人称代词时要用宾格形式。

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 113 页)

词汇过关

一、读一读，找出每组中不同类的单词。

【分类记忆法】

(　　)1. A. broken　　B. heavy　　C. umbrella

(　　)2. A. pocket　　B. wheel　　C. light

(　　)3. A. buy　　B. easy　　C. take

(　　)4. A. try　　B. nice　　C. carry

(　　)5. A. hard　　B. bag　　C. pencil

二、根据图片选择恰当的单词补全句子。

【反义词记忆法】

easy　small　heavy　big　light　hard

1. The orange is _____.

The watermelon is _____.




2. The leaf(树叶) is _____.

The stone(石头)is _____.




3. It's _____to walk on the road.

It's _____ to climb a mountain.




句型语法过关

三、单项选择。

(　　)1. I can't carry this box. It's _____.

A. heavy　　B. light　　C. small

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(　　)2. It'll _____ for you to do that.

A. easy　　B. be easy　　C. is easy

(　　)3. My T-shirt has got a dog _____it.

A. on　　B. in　　C. at

(　　)4. _____ you got any dresses?

A. Has　　B. Are　　C. Have

(　　)5. This sweater is _____ small _____ you.　　【导学号 2271504】

A. so;to　　B. too;for　　C. very;to

(　　)6. —What about this T-shirt?

—It's nice. I'll _____ it.

A. take　　B. find　　C. use

四、读句子，想一想，然后选一选。

【分析推理法】

A. 　B. 　C. 

D. 　E. 

(　　)1. Climbing is easy for me. But carrying things is hard for me.

(　　)2. Swimming is easy for me. But walking is hard for me.

(　　)3. Flying is easy for me. But swimming is hard for me.

(　　)4. Running is easy for me. But flying is hard for me.

(　　)5. Jumping is easy for me. But climbing is hard for me.

综合运用过关

五、阅读短文，根据短文内容选择正确答案。

I am Amy. I have two schoolbags. Look at this bag. It's blue. It's big and heavy. It has got three pockets. But it hasn't got any wheels. My mother bought it three years ago. It looks old now. Look at this new one. It's pink. It's my favourite colour. It's my birthday present. My father bought it when he went to Shanghai. It's big and light. And it has got six pockets and four wheels. It has got a lovely girl on it. It's easy to carry. I like it very much.

(　　)1. How many schoolbags does Amy have?

A. One.　　B. Two.　　C. Three.

(　　)2. What colour is her old schoolbag?

A. Red.　　B. Blue.　　C. Pink.

(　　)3. Is her new schoolbag big and light?

A. Yes, it is.　　B. No, it isn't.

C. I don't know.

(　　)4. Who bought the new schoolbag?

A. Amy's mother.　　B. Amy's father.

C. Amy.

(　　)5. Which schoolbag has got wheels?

A. The blue schoolbag.

B. The heavy bag.

C. The pink schoolbag.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 6 复习训练

知识导图



本模块重难、易错点提醒

1. 在月份前用介词 in。
2. "in the + 方位词 + of + 地点"表示"在某地的某方位"。
3. 介词 with 后面接 sb.，意为"和某人一起"，sb. 如果是人称代词要用宾格形式。

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 114 页)

词汇过关

一、仔细观察，圈出表格中你学过的单词。

p	j	r	e	s	t
n	s	i	m	b	a
o	o	d	p	e	z
r	u	e	a	s	t
t	t	q	c	t	d
h	h	w	e	s	t

二、看图片，根据图片提示填单词。

1. I went to the park with my _____ last weekend.



2. She _____ a bike yesterday.



3. The _____ is in the sky.



4. Shanghai is in the _____ of China.



5. I went to Beijing and _____ Tian'anmen Square.



句型语法过关

三、单项选择。

(　　)1. Last week Mary _____ to Shanxi.

A. goes　　B. go　　C. went

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)2. —Where is Guangzhou?

—It's _____ the south of China.

A. at　　B. on　　C. in

(　　)3. —_____ you take any photos?

—Yes, I did.

A. Are　　B. Do　　C. Did

(　　)4. I am going to Yunnan _____ July.

A. in　　B. on　　C. at

(　　)5. —_____ did you go last week?

—I went to Dalian.

A. Where　　B. What　　C. When

四、选词填空。

to　for　in　with　of

1. I met my cousin _____ June.
2. I have got some photos _____ my family.
3. Where did you go _____ your holidays?
4. Daming stayed _____ his grandma in Shanghai.
5. —Did you go _____ Yunnan?

—No, I didn't.

五、根据提示词回答问题。

1. Where did you go last summer? (Chengdu)

_____

2. Where is it? (west of China)

_____

3. When did you go there? (in July)

_____

4. Who did you go there with? (my father)

_____

5. How did you get there? (by train)

_____

6. What did you do? (eat delicious food)

_____

综合运用过关

六、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

I'm Daming. My uncle lives in Shanghai. Last week I went to Shanghai by train. My uncle met me at the train station. We visited many famous places. I took many photos. But I didn't buy any presents. Of course I ate delicious food. I stayed there for three days. I had a lovely time.

(　　)1. Daming went to Shanghai by _____.

A. ship　　B. train　　C. plane

(　　)2. Daming went there _____.

A. last year　　B. last week

C. last month

(　　)3. —Did they visit many famous places?

—_____

A. Yes, they do.　　B. No, they didn't.

C. Yes, they did.

(　　)4. —Did Daming buy any presents?

—_____

A. Yes, he did.　　B. No, he didn't.

C. Yes, he is.

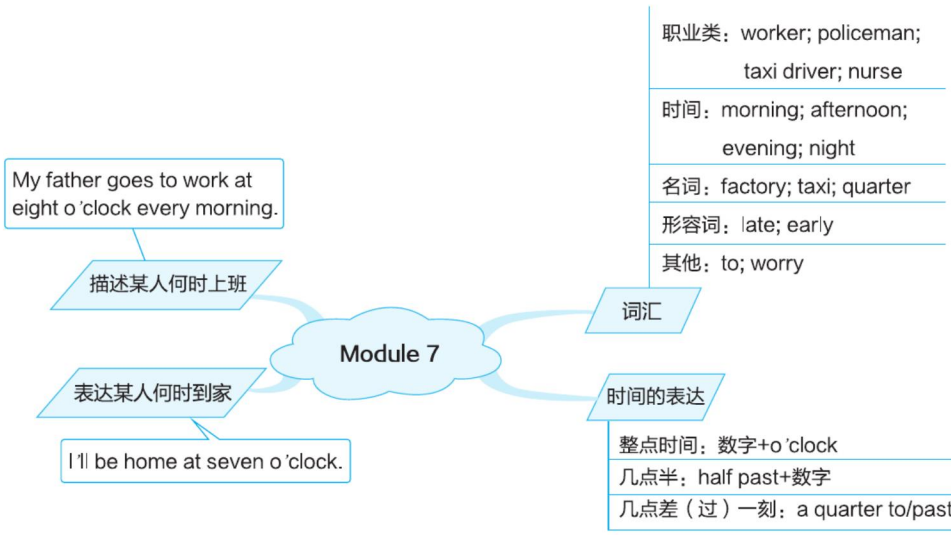
(　　)5. Daming stayed in Shanghai for _____ days.

A. three　　B. four　　C. five

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 7 复习训练

知识导图



本模块重难、易错点提醒

1. 询问某人职业用：What + do/does + 主语 + do? 回答：主语 + be 动词 + (a/an) + 职业名称。
2. 表达时间时，前面用介词 at。
3. 询问某人几点将做某事：What time + will + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 114 页)

词汇过关

一、读一读，将同类单词写在横线上。

evening	worker	early	late
morning	plane	twelve	
taxi	policeman	three	

1. heavy _____ _____
2. night _____ _____
3. train _____ _____
4. doctor _____ _____
5. eight _____ _____

二、根据钟表写出时间。

1. I have breakfast at _____ every morning.



2. My mother goes to work at _____.



3. Fangfang has Chinese class at _____ in the afternoon.



4. I go to bed at _____ every night.



三、看图片，将句子补充完整。

1. Mr Lin is a _____.
   He works in a _____.



2. —What _____ your sister do?
   —She is a _____.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. School _____ at eight o'clock. Bob _____ up at a quarter to eight. He is too _____.



4. Dad goes to _____ at nine o'clock in the morning. Dad will be _____ at seven o'clock in the evening.



句型语法过关

四、单项选择。

( )1. —What _____ your uncle do?
—_____ is a worker.
A. do; She B. does; He
C. does; She

( )2. I'll _____ late.
A. is B. be C. am

( )3. Mr Li _____ to work at five every morning.
A. goes B. go C. went

( )4. —What time is it now?
—It's half _____ six. It's early.
A. of B. past C. to

( )5. It's eleven o'clock. It's time to go to bed. It's very _____.
A. early B. late C. worry

( )6. —_____ will you be home?
—I'll be home at five.
A. What B. Where C. What time

五、按要求完成句子。

1. Are you going to be late? (用 will 改写句子)

_____

2. It's eight o'clock. (对画线部分提问)

_____

3. I will be home at seven o'clock. (写出同义句)

_____

4. Dad will be home at 8 o'clock. (对画线部分提问)

_____

5. My father goes to work at seven o'clock every morning. (改为否定句)

_____

综合运用过关

六、阅读短文，根据短文内容判断句子正(T)误(F)。

I'm Wang Yong. I'm at home at five o'clock in the afternoon. Grandma is cooking dinner in the kitchen. I am doing my homework in the room. I am hungry. Now it's six o'clock. Dinner is ready. All my family are eating dinner. The food is tasty. It's a quarter to seven. I'm washing the dishes. Mum is reading a book. Grandma is watching TV in the living room. Father is answering the phone. Grandpa is drawing a picture in his bedroom.

( )1. Wang Yong is doing his homework at school.

( )2. Wang Yong's grandma cooks dinner at six o'clock in the afternoon.

( )3. They are eating dinner at six o'clock.

( )4. Wang Yong washes the dishes at a quarter past seven.

( )5. Wang Yong's grandpa is watching TV.

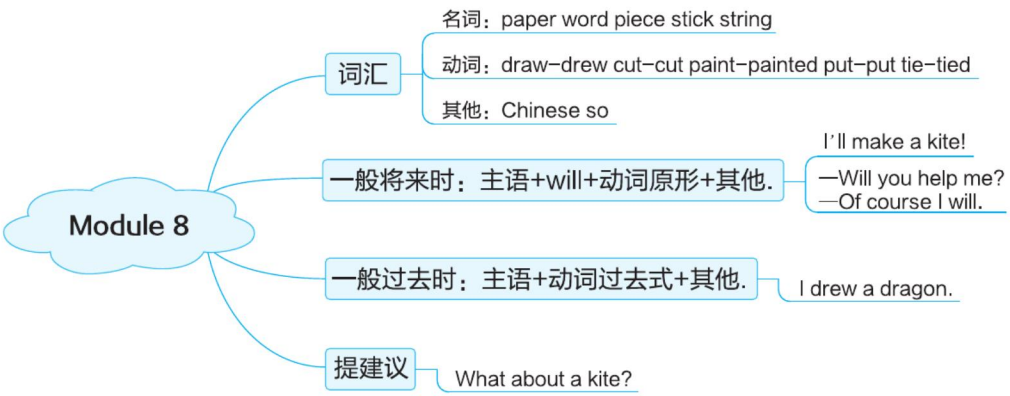
七、根据短文内容及首字母提示完成短文。

Today is my father's 1. b_____. My mother and I will 2. m_____ a birthday cake for him. It's six o'clock now. My father isn't at home. He is at 3. w_____. He will be 4. h_____ at seven o'clock. I'll sing a song for him. And then we'll have a big 5. d_____. We will have a good time this 6. e_____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 8 复习训练

知识导图



本模块重难、易错点提醒

1. draw 通常指用铅笔、钢笔或粉笔画，paint 指用颜料画或着色。
2. will 表示将要，后面接动词原形。一般将来时的一般疑问句要将 will 提前，其他不变。
   肯定回答：Yes，主语 + will. 否定回答：No，主语 + won't.

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 114 页)

词汇过关

一、根据句意及首字母提示填单词。

1. —Where are you from?
   —I am from China. I am C_____.
2. —The cake is delicious.
   —I think s_____.
3. —Can you spell this w_____?
   —Yes. A-P-P-L-E.
4. I'll make a paper plane. Please pass me a p_____ of paper.
5. —How many s_____ (木棍) are there?
   —Five.

句型语法过关

二、单项选择。

(　　)1. I am going to _____ my uncle _____ Wuhan.
A. visits; in　　B. visited; of
C. visit; in

(　　)2. I'll _____ a birthday cake.
A. make　　B. makes　　C. made

(　　)3. —What's _____ name?
—His name is Sam.
A. your　　B. her　　C. his

(　　)4. —Will it _____ in Beijing?
—I think so.
A. rainy　　B. sunny　　C. snow

(　　)5. Yesterday I _____ a picture on a piece _____ paper.
A. draw; of　　B. drew; for　　C. drew; of

(　　)6. The farmer _____ the cow _____ that tree.
A. tie; in　　B. tie; on　　C. tied; to

(　　)7. I _____ a kite _____ my mother. She was happy.
A. make; of　　B. made; for
C. making; for

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)8. Daming could _____ his kite.

A. fly　　B. flying　　C. flies

(　　)9. It _____ next Monday.

A. will windy　　B. be windy

C. will be windy

三、看图，补全句子。

1. —Will you _____ ?

—Yes, _____.



2. —Will you _____?

—No, _____.



3. —What will you do?

—I will _____.



4. —What will you do?

—I will _____.



5. —What did they do?

—They _____.



四、改写句子。

1. My brother is drawing a picture now.

_____ yesterday.

2. She will put sticks on the desk.

_____ two hours ago.

3. I'll cut the birthday cake for my mother.

_____ just now(刚才).

综合运用过关

五、选择合适的句子补全对话。

Susan: What's the matter, Lily?

Lily: 1. _____

Susan: Where does he live?

Lily: 2. _____

Susan: What about a toy panda?

Lily: 3. _____

Susan: Oh, what about a book about China?

Lily: 4. _____

Susan: Let's go and buy a book about China.

Lily: 5. _____

A. He lives in New York.

B. OK. Let's go.

C. I don't think so. He is fifteen.

D. I will visit my cousin. What present can I buy?

E. Good idea. I think he will love it.

六、阅读短文，回答问题。

Sam was busy last week. He did lots of things. He played football with his friends on Monday. He listened to music on Tuesday evening. On Wednesday, he watched sports on TV. On Thursday, he helped his mother. On Friday, he washed his father's car. He walked in the park with his parents on Saturday. He played the guitar on Sunday.

1. What did Sam do on Monday?

_____

2. What did Sam do on Tuesday evening?

_____

3. Did Sam play computer games on Wednesday?

_____

4. Did Sam help his mother on Thursday?

_____

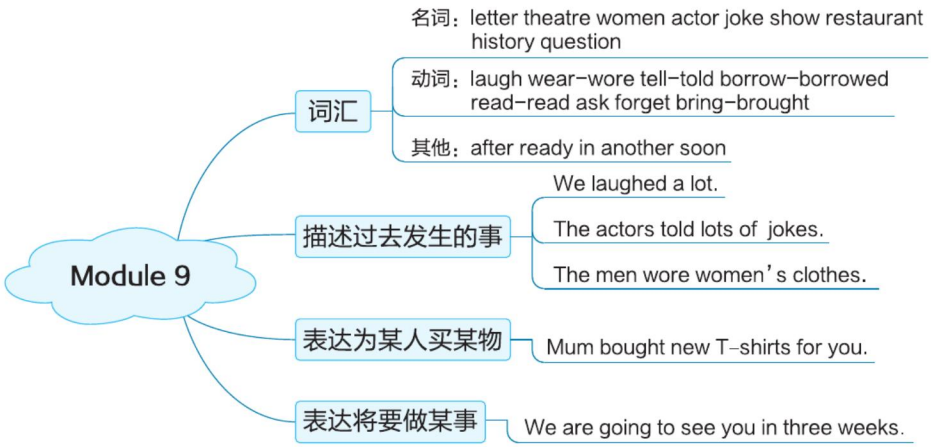
5. What did Sam do on Sunday?

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 9 复习训练

知识导图



本模块重难、易错点提醒

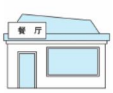
1. 表达“你为……做好准备了吗?”可用句型:Are you ready for ＋名词? 若接动词,for 应改为 to。
2. in three weeks 表示“在三周后”,介词 in 意为“在(将来一段时间)之后”,与一般将来时连用。

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 114 页)

词汇过关

一、读句子，根据图片补全单词。

1. Mum,I am hungry. Let's go to the r_____.



2. That w_____ is my aunt.



3. I will go to the t_____ with my parents.



4. Mike w_____ a T-shirt yesterday.



5. Mum t_____ me a story yesterday evening.



句型语法过关

二、单项选择。

(　　)1. He read a funny story just now(刚才). We _____ a lot.

A. laugh　　B. laughed　　C. smile

(　　)2. Last month we went to the zoo. We _____ pandas.

A. see　　B. saw　　C. look

(　　)3. I like _____ English songs.

A. listening　　B. listen

C. listening to

(　　)4. Mum _____ a new dress for me last week.

A. buy　　B. bought　　C. buying

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(　　)5. Are you ready _____ your trip _____ America?

A. in; for　　B. to; in　　C. for; to

三、看图片，想一想，然后将句子补充完整。


yesterday


now


tomorrow

1. Lily _____ yesterday.

2. Lily _____ now.

3. Lily _____ tomorrow.


yesterday


now


tomorrow

4. Jack _____ yesterday.

5. Jack _____ now.

6. Jack _____ tomorrow.

综合运用过关

四、读一读，选择合适的句子补全对话。

A: Hi, Jack! 1. _____

B: I'm fine, thank you.

A: 2. _____

B: I went to Shanghai with my mother.

A: 3. _____

B: I saw a theatre. The show was interesting.

4. _____

A: I stayed at home.

B: 5. _____

A: No, I read a book and did my homework.

A. What did you do last week?

B. Did you watch TV?

C. What about you?

D. How are you?

E. What did you see?

五、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Dear Ann,

How are you? Yesterday I saw a TV programme. The child wore his mother's dress and his father's shoes. It was very funny.

My parents and I are going to see you next month. My mother is going to buy a new book for you. I have many things to do with you. We can do homework and listen to music every day.

See you soon!

Love,

Daming

(　　)1. Daming and his parents will see Ann next month.

(　　)2. The child wore his father's T-shirt and his mother's shoes.

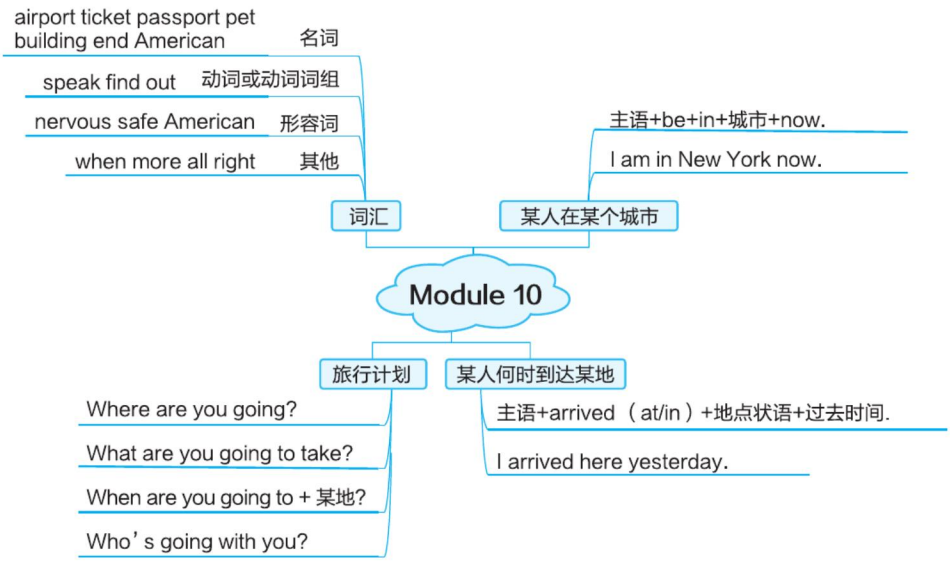
(　　)3. Daming's mother is going to buy a new book for Ann.

(　　)4. Daming is going to do homework with Ann.

(　　)5. Daming is going to play computer games with Ann.

Module 10 复习训练

知识导图



本模块重难、易错点提醒

含有 be going to 的一般将来时的特殊疑问句，用于谈论计划或打算。回答时，必须根据特殊疑问词回答。where 引导的问句应回答某个地点，when 引导的问句应回答时间，what 引导的问句应回答某事或某物，who 引导的问句应回答某人。

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见 114 页)

词汇过关

一、读句子，根据图片或句意补全单词。

1. Tomorrow I'll have an English exam(考试).
   I feel n_____.



2. My uncle works in a tall b_____.



3. I can s_____ Chinese.



4. —W_____ are you going to London?
   —Next week.

5. Show me your p_____.



句型语法过关

二、单项选择。

(　　)1. —_____ are you going to take?
—My books.
A. Where　　B. What　　C. When

(　　)2. —_____ are you going?
—To the airport.
A. Where　　B. What　　C. When

( )3. I will draw a picture _____ my school.

A. to B. on C. of

( )4. Sarah is in _____. She's an _____ girl.

A. American; American

B. America; American

C. American; America

( )5. —Are you ready for your English exam (考试)?

—_____

A. Yes, I will. B. I think so.

C. That's a good idea.

三、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. They _____ (meet) me in Beijing yesterday.
2. I _____ (arrive) in Beijing last Sunday.
3. Mum _____ (make) a birthday cake for me tomorrow.
4. She _____ (take) a taxi to school. She is in the classroom now.
5. I want _____ (find) out more about the UFO.
6. I will _____ (write) again soon.

四、对画线部分提问。

1. Daming went to Xi'an last week.

_____

2. Lingling is going to school with Amy.

_____

3. I am going to the park this afternoon.

_____

4. Sam is going to take a ball to the park.

_____

综合运用过关

五、读一读，选择句子补全对话。

A: Hi, Jack! Summer holiday is coming. Where are you going this holiday?

B: 1. _____

A: Who's going with you?

B: 2. _____

A: How are you going there?

B: 3. _____

A: When are you going there?

B: 4. _____ What about your holiday?

A: 5. _____

A. By plane.
B. About next week.
C. I'm going to visit my grandparents.
D. I'm going to Shanghai.
E. My parents.

六、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Jimmy and Tony are good friends. They're planning their trips. Jimmy is going to Australia. It's hot there. He can swim all day. He has a new pair of sunglasses. But Tony doesn't like swimming. He likes skating. So he is going to Canada. It's winter there now. He can skate all day. He has winter clothes and new ice skates.

( )1. Jimmy is going to _____.

A. Canada B. China C. Australia

( )2. Tony likes _____.

A. swimming B. skating

C. riding a bike

( )3. Jimmy has _____.

A. sunglasses B. winter clothes

C. winter clothes and ice skates

( )4. It's _____ in Canada now.

A. spring B. summer C. winter

全书听力专练 ☞(答案见115页)

听力(一)

听力训练(一)

一、听录音,选出你所听到的单词。

( )1. A. read B. ride C. write

( )2. A. watch B. wash C. wish

( )3. A. soon B. moon C. when

( )4. A. cut B. put C. nut

( )5. A. life B. love C. gave

二、听录音,选出你所听到的句子。 【对比法】

( )1. A. What did she have for breakfast?

B. What did she have for lunch?

( )2. A. Where are the books about animals?

B. Where are the books about computers?

( )3. A. There weren't any cars before.

B. There weren't any buses before.

( )4. A. There was a small house two years ago.

B. There was a big house three years ago.

( )5. A. This black bag is nice.

B. This blue bag is heavy.

三、听录音,选出合适的答语。

( )1. A. He had some bread and milk.

B. I had hamburgers.

( )2. A. Yes, she does.

B. She likes Chinese food.

( )3. A. Yes, he did.

B. No, he doesn't.

( )4. A. Yes, I do.

B. No, I didn't.

( )5. A. Yes, there are.

B. No, there weren't.

四、听录音,根据录音内容填空并在表格里打"√"。

	Lingling has got a _____.	Sam has got a _____.	Amy has got a _____.
light			
heavy			
easy			
hard			
new			
old			

听力(二)

听力训练(二)

一、听录音,根据录音内容填空。

1. Mr White and Mr Brown got up at _____ last Saturday morning.
2. My grandpa _____ in the fields.
3. The driver is _____.
4. They took a _____ to Dalian.
5. Hainan is in the _____ of China.

二、听录音,判断下列图片与所听内容是(T)否(F)相符。 【听关键词法】

1.  ( )

2.  ( )

3.  ( )

4.  ( )

5.  ( )

三、听录音,给下列句子排序。

( )Where can I find a book about art?

( )Did your uncle work on a farm?

( )What did they do with Mr Black?

( )What does Mr Smith do?

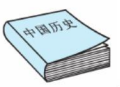
( )What did you eat for breakfast?

四、听录音，根据录音内容连线。

1. Sarah　　A. 

2. Bob　　B. 

3. Mark　　C. 

4. Fangfang　　D. 

听力（三）

听力训练（三）

一、听录音，选出你所听到的单词。

(　　)1. A. busy　　B. lady　　C. easy

(　　)2. A. world　　B. word　　C. walk

(　　)3. A. write　　B. light　　C. night

(　　)4. A. women　　B. dragon　　C. foreign

(　　)5. A. other　　B. another　　C. father

二、听录音，选出与你所听内容相符的图片。

(　　)1. A. 　　B. 

C. 

(　　)2. A. 
　　B. 

C. 

(　　)3. A. 
　　B. 

C. 

(　　)4. A. 　　B. 

C. 

(　　)5. A. 　　B. 

C. 

三、听录音，根据录音内容选择正确的答语。

(　　)1. A. I am going to Shanghai.

B. I bought some clothes.

(　　)2. A. I will be home at eight o'clock.

B. He will be home at six o'clock.

(　　)3. A. What about a football?

B. I like hamburgers.

(　　)4. A. It's in the east of China.

B. It's in the west of China.

(　　)5. A. She works at school.

B. Yes, she did.

四、听短文，判断下列句子与录音内容是（T）否（F）相符。　　【推理法】

(　　)1. Daming is in America now.

(　　)2. Daming is visiting America with his classmate, Simon.

(　　)3. New York is the biggest city in the US.

(　　)4. "The Big Apple" is another name of New York.

(　　)5. Grandma only makes Chinese food for Daming.

全书知识小结

词 汇

(一)名词

1. 人物类

interviewer 采访者　lady 女士,夫人
dancer 舞蹈演员　student 学生
parent 父亲;母亲;家长　worker 工人
women (woman 的复数形式)妇女,女性
actor 演员　American 美国人

2. 物品类

television 电视机　telephone 电话　radio 收音机
fire 火,炉火　dictionary 词典;字典　card 卡片
guide 介绍,指南,手册　e-book 电子书
umbrella 雨伞　wheel 轮子　pocket 口袋,兜
taxi 出租车,计程车　paper 纸
stick 小木棍,小木条　letter 信,书信
ticket 票　passport 护照

3. 方向名词

south 南,南部,向南方;南方
west 西,西部,向西方;西方
east 东,东部,向东方;东方
north 北,北部,向北方;北方

4. 饮食类

hamburger 汉堡包　breakfast 早餐,早饭
lunch 午餐,午饭　dish 食品;菜肴
sandwich 三明治

5. 场所名词

field 田地　library 图书馆　factory 制造厂;工厂
theatre 剧院　restaurant 饭店,餐馆
airport 机场　building 建筑物

6. 时间名词

night 夜晚,夜间　June 六月
July 七月　evening 傍晚,晚上

(二)动词

1. 动词原形

change 改变,变化　work 工作;劳动;干活儿
write 写　hope 希望　put 放,安放
take 选择要;选择购买　try 试,尝试
remember 记得　stay 停留　get 到达
worry 焦虑,担心　paint (用颜料)绘画,着色
laugh 笑　forget 忘,忘记　borrow 借入,借来
ask 邀请;问,询问　bring 带来,拿来　speak 说,讲

2. 动词的过去式

learnt (learn 的过去式)学习
taught (teach 的过去式)教,讲授
wrote (write 的过去式)写
studied (study 的过去式)学习
gave (give 的过去式)给
sent (send 的过去式)发送,寄
rode (ride 的过去式)骑
drew (draw 的过去式)画
cut (cut 的过去式)切,剪,割
tied (tie 的过去式)扎上,系上
put (put 的过去式)放,安放
wore (wear 的过去式)穿
told (tell 的过去式)口述,讲(故事等)
read (read 的过去式)读

(三)形容词

best 最好的　different 不同的　enough 足够的
early 早的　foreign 外国的　English 英国(式)的
traditional 传统的　heavy 重的,沉的
wrong 错误的　light 轻的
easy 容易的,不费力的
lovely 可爱的,美丽的;令人愉快的
hard 费力的,困难的
late 近日暮的;近深夜的;时间不早的
Chinese 中国人的　ready 准备好的
safe 平安的,安全的
American 美国的;美国人的
nervous 紧张的,情绪不安的

(四)副词

still 还,仍然　ago 以前　hard 努力地
tonight 今夜,今晚　too 太,过于　so 如此,这样
soon 不久,很快　when 在什么时候

(五)介词

on 关于　to (距整点)差……
after 在……后
in 在(将来一段时间)之后

交际用语

(一)描述过去和现在生活的变化

1. Look, there are two beautiful cats on the chair.
   看,椅子上有两只漂亮的猫。
2. Well, there were two. 噢,(刚才)有两只。
3. It's a programme about China.
   它是一个有关中国的节目。
4. We lived in a small house.
   我们住在一所小房子里。
5. There weren't any televisions. 没有任何电视。
6. She worked in the fields. 她在田地里劳动。
7. She didn't have a television or a radio.
   她没有一台电视机或一台收音机。

(二)描述某人从过去到现在的变化

1. —Did she learn any foreign languages?
   她学过任何外语吗?
   —Yes, she learnt English.
   是的,她学过英语。
2. But he's learning English now!
   但是现在他正在学习英语!
3. Twenty years ago, Mr Li was a teacher.
   二十年前,李先生是一名教师。
4. He studied very hard. 他学习非常努力。

(三)询问和回答一日三餐

1. What did she have for breakfast/dinner?
   她早餐/晚餐吃了什么?
2. Today Sam ate four hamburgers at school!
   今天萨姆在学校吃了四个汉堡包!

(四)提出建议;说明能做的事

1. Sorry, we haven't got books for you.
   对不起,我们没有为你准备书。
2. Let's make a home library.
   咱们做个家庭图书馆吧。
3. These are all books about science.
   这些都是关于科学方面的书。
4. Where can I find it? 我可以在哪里找到它?
5. We can find information from books and CDs.
   我们可以从书和光盘里获取信息。

(五)谈论事物的特征

1. It's big and light. 它又大又轻。
2. This black bag is nice. 这个黑色包很漂亮。
3. And it's got two pockets. 并且它有两个口袋。
4. It'll be easy for you to carry. 它对你来说将会容易携带。
5. It's too big for you.
   它对你来说太大。

(六)介绍旅行经历

1. I went there last year. 我去年去过那儿。
2. It's in the west of China.
   它在中国的西部。
3. Did you go with your parents?
   你和你父母一起去的吗?
4. She visited the Tianchi Lake.
   她参观了天池。

(七)谈论活动或行为发生的时间

1. My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning.
   我爸爸每天早上八点钟去上班。
2. What does he do? 他是干什么的?
3. I'll be home at seven o'clock.
   我会在七点钟回家。

(八)表达请求和意愿;谈论过去的行为

1. Will you help me? 你会帮我吗?
2. I'm going to visit my cousin in New York.
   我要去看望在纽约的表兄。
3. I'll make a kite! 我要做个风筝!
4. I drew a dragon on a piece of yellow paper.
   我在一张黄纸上画了一条龙。
5. What will you do tomorrow?
   明天你将要干什么?

(九)谈论过去发生的事情

1. The men wore women's clothes.
   那些男人穿着女人的衣服。
2. The actors told lots of jokes.
   那些演员们讲了很多笑话。
3. We laughed a lot. 我们开怀大笑。
4. After the show we went to a restaurant.
   演出后,我们去了一家餐厅。
5. Mum bought new T-shirts for you.
   妈妈给你买了新T恤衫。

(十)制订和谈论计划;谈论旅行经历

1. Where are you going? 你将要去哪里?
2. You can make a list of things to do.
   你可以把要做的事情列一张清单。
3. What are you going to take? 你将要带什么?
4. When are you going to the airport?
   你打算什么时候去机场?
5. Who's going to the airport with you?
   谁将和你一起去机场?
6. I'm in New York now. 我现在在纽约。
7. I arrived here yesterday. 我昨天到达这儿的。

月考卷一 Modules 1～3 过关检测卷

时间:40 分钟　满分:100 分

	听力(30 分)				笔试(70 分)								总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	分
得　分													

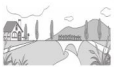
第一部分　听力 (30 分)

听力测试

一 听录音,选出你所听到的单词。(5 分)

( )1. A. night　　B. write　　C. tonight
( )2. A. telephone　　B. radio　　C. television
( )3. A. programme　　B. different　　C. dish
( )4. A. changes　　B. sandwiches　　C. languages
( )5. A. fields　　B. fires　　C. fishes

二 听录音,根据录音内容选择正确的图片。(10 分)

( )1. A. 　B. 
( )2. A. 　B. 
( )3. A. 　B. 
( )4. A. 　B. 
( )5. A. 　B. 

三 听录音,选出所听问句的正确答语。(10 分)

( )1. A. I had a hamburger.　　B. She had some sandwiches.
( )2. A. He goes to school by bus.　　B. He is thirty now.
( )3. A. I live in Guangzhou.　　B. I like him very much.
( )4. A. No, he isn't.　　B. Yes, she did.
( )5. A. I'm learning English.　　B. I played football.

四 听录音,根据所听内容填空。(5 分)

1. Xiaoming did his homework last _____.
2. My grandparents live in a _____ house.
3. Now Mr Zhang doesn't _____.
4. Did you _____ an email to Sam?
5. All the pupils _____ very hard.

第二部分　笔试 (70 分)

五 根据提示给下列单词分类。(5 分)

A. strong　B. hamburgers　C. telephone　D. changing　E. dancer

1. television	radio	computer	_____
2. different	small	beautiful	_____
3. talking	learning	working	_____
4. teacher	driver	interviewer	_____
5. rice	noodles	sandwiches	_____

六 判断下列每组单词画线部分的发音是(T)否(F)相同。(5 分)

( )1. A. bread　　B. breakfast　　C. teach
( )2. A. party　　B. warm　　C. farmer
( )3. A. talk　　B. walk　　C. all
( )4. A. lunch　　B. study　　C. but
( )5. A. hair　　B. chair　　C. pair

七 单项选择。(10 分)

( )1. The old lady _____ in a small house many years ago.
A. live　　B. lives　　C. lived

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

( )2. Tonight Mum is going to cook Chinese food for _____.
A. she B. his C. her

( )3. Xiaohong _____ to dance last summer.
A. learnt B. learns C. learning

( )4. This lady is old. She can't read _____ write.
A. or B. and C. but

( )5. Miss Wang _____ us English this year.
A. teaching B. teaches C. teach

( )6. What did Lingling _____ for breakfast?
A. has B. had C. have

( )7. Thank you _____ coming to my party.
A. to B. with C. for

( )8. My sister likes _____ in the hospital.
A. work B. works C. working

( )9. Amy and Lingling are talking _____ the photos.
A. about B. from C. of

( )10. — _____ —It's my grandma.
A. How about now? B. Who's this? C. Who are they?

八 根据图片提示补全句子。(10分)



1. It's a programme _____ _____.

2. He goes to school _____ _____ _____.

3. My grandparents worked _____ _____ _____.

4. The pupils _____ _____ _____ now.

5. Sam _____ _____ _____ yesterday.

九 读句子,找出问句对应的答句。(10分)

( )1. Where did you live ten years ago? A. My cousin Simon.
( )2. Did he learn any foreign languages? B. I lived in Wuhan.
( )3. What did Miss Chen do? C. She had some milk and sandwiches.
( )4. What did she have for breakfast? D. She was a dancer.
( )5. Who wrote a letter to you? E. Yes, he learnt English.

十 选择合适的单词补全短文。(10分)

enough lived television fire different

I'm 72 years old now. I have a happy family. My sons and grandchildren are kind to me. However(然而), my life was 1. _____ many years ago. At that time, I 2. _____ in a small and old house. My mother cooked on a 3. _____. We didn't have 4. _____ food. Now I live in a big and nice house. And I have a big 5. _____. I watch TV every day.

十一 阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。(10分) (建议用时:5分钟)

Sara is from England. She's eleven years old. She lived in England with her grandparents two years ago. Now she lives in China. Her parents work in a school in China. Her father is a PE teacher, and her mother is an English teacher. Her grandpa is a musician (音乐家). He can play the piano quite well. Her grandma is a dancer. She can dance very well.

( )1. Now Sara is in England with her parents.
( )2. Sara's father works in China.
( )3. Sara's mother is a Chinese teacher.
( )4. Sara's grandpa can play the piano.
( )5. Sara's grandma is a musician.

十二 小作文。(10分)

Dongdong 正在英国度假,下面是他昨天三餐吃的食物。假如你是 Dongdong,请写一篇小作文,说说自己都吃了什么。

要求:语句通顺,条理清晰,不少于40个单词。

Breakfast	some milk, two eggs, some bread
Lunch	fish and chips
Dinner	two hamburgers, some sausages

期中检测卷

时间:60分钟 满分:100分

	听力(30分)				笔试(70分)								总
题 号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	分
得 分													

第一部分 听力(30分)

听力测试

一 听录音,根据所听短语的先后顺序,将其汉语意思用ABC排序。(10分)

1. (　)做蛋糕　(　)建家庭图书馆　(　)做生日卡片
2. (　)许多年前　(　)二十年前　(　)五年以前
3. (　)在田地里　(　)在炉火上　(　)在一个小村庄里
4. (　)努力学习　(　)谈论　(　)好主意
5. (　)放风筝　(　)步行上学　(　)骑自行车

二 听录音,判断所听内容与图片是(T)否(F)相符。(5分)


1. (　)

2. (　)

3. (　)


4. (　)

5. (　)

三 听录音,根据你听到的答语选出正确的问句。(10分)

(　)1. A. Where did you live ten years ago?　B. How did you go to school five years ago?
(　)2. A. Who ate a hamburger for dinner yesterday?
　　B. What did you have for dinner yesterday?
(　)3. A. What are these big books?　B. Where are the books about art?
(　)4. A. Have you got a blue T-shirt?　B. Have you got a small one,please?
(　)5. A. What did he do last Sunday?　B. When did he go home yesterday?

四 听录音,补全句子。(5分)

1. I watched TV with my grandma last _____.
2. This green bag is nice and _____.
3. Daming had eggs and milk for _____.
4. It's _____ to ride a bike.
5. Mr Wang doesn't _____ now. He is old.

第二部分 笔试(70分)

五 判断下列每组单词画线部分的发音是(T)否(F)相同。(10分)

(　)1. wait　email　(　)2. warm　hard
(　)3. draw　saw　(　)4. meat　bread
(　)5. wear　near　(　)6. here　there
(　)7. girl　birthday　(　)8. food　look
(　)9. play　today　(　)10. walk　autumn

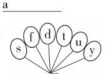
六 射掉一个多余的气球(用×表示),将剩余气球上的字母组成单词,并写下来。(首字母已给出)(6分)

1. 

i_____
2. 

a_____
3. 

f_____
4. 

e_____
5. 

s_____
6. 

e_____

七 单项选择。(10分)

(　)1. There _____ any buses then.
　　A. wasn't　B. were　C. weren't
(　)2. He sent these toys _____ his friend.
　　A. in　B. to　C. at
(　)3. I gave a kite _____ my little sister.
　　A. in　B. for　C. to
(　)4. _____ can you find information?
　　A. Where　B. Who　C. What
(　)5. She _____ a book five years ago.
　　A. writes　B. is writing　C. wrote
(　)6. I _____ a kite yesterday. Let's _____ it today.
　　A. made; fly　B. make; to fly　C. made; flying

姓名 学号 班级 学校 密 封 线

( )7. Thank you for _____ us clean the classroom.
A. helping B. helps C. to help

( )8. It's _____ big for you _____ carry(搬).
A. too; too B. to; too C. too; to

( )9. What did Lingling have _____ dinner?
A. at B. of C. for

( )10. What are you going to _____ tonight?
A. ate B. eat C. eating

八 用方框中单词的适当形式完成句子。(5分)

get dance go have make

1. Amy _____ a cake last Sunday. 2. Mum is going to _____ shopping tonight.
3. Sam _____ up early(早) in the morning. 4. Mary likes _____ very much.
5. Lingling wants to _____ some bread.

九 按要求改写句子。(10分)

1. She could read and write. (改为否定句)
She _____ read _____ write.
2. She learnt English. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ _____ _____ _____?
3. He lived in Hangzhou last year. (对画线部分提问)
_____ _____ he _____ last year?
4. This green bag is big. It's light. (合并为一个句子)
This green bag is _____ _____ _____.
5. I had two hamburgers for lunch. (对画线部分提问)
_____ _____ _____ _____ for lunch?

十 阅读对话,判断句子正(T)误(F)。(10分) (建议用时:5分钟)

Lingling: Mum, my dresses are too small. I want a big one.
Mum: OK. Let's go to the supermarket.
At the supermarket...
Mum: Look at that dress. It's white and beautiful. Let's try it.
Lingling: Oh, it's too long for me. And it's too expensive(昂贵的). How about this pink dress, Mum?

Mum: It's too big for you. Do you like that blue dress?
Lingling: Yes. I like it. It's got a lovely girl on it. May I try it on?
Sales assistant: Sure. Here you are.
Mum: Great. It's nice for you, Lingling. We'll take it. How much is it?
Sales assistant: It's fifty *yuan*. It's cheap.

( )1. Lingling's old dresses are small.
( )2. The white dress is too long for Lingling.
( )3. The pink dress is small too.
( )4. The blue dress is nice and cheap.
( )5. Mum didn't buy the blue dress.

十一 阅读短文,根据短文内容填空。(10分) (建议用时:5分钟)

Many English people have four meals a day. They are breakfast, lunch, afternoon tea and dinner.

People have breakfast at any time from seven to nine in the morning. They usually have porridge, eggs and bread. English people also drink tea or coffee at breakfast. Lunch begins at about one o'clock in the afternoon. Afternoon tea is often from four to five in the afternoon. People have dinner at about half past seven. First, they have soup. Then they have meat or fish with vegetables. After that, they eat some fruit, like bananas, apples or oranges.

1. English people _____ _____ at any time from 7 to 9 in the morning.
2. English people also drink _____ or _____ at breakfast.
3. Lunch begins at about _____ _____ in the afternoon.
4. _____ _____ is often from four to five in the afternoon.
5. People have dinner at about _____ _____ _____.

十二 小作文。(9分)

Lucy 的连衣裙小了,妈妈想给她买一个新的。请写一段 Lucy 和妈妈在商店买连衣裙的对话吧!

提示:售货员 sales assistant

要求:语句通顺,语法正确,不少于40个单词。

密 封 线

月考卷二 Modules 6～8 过关检测卷

时间:40 分钟　满分:100 分

题号	听力(30 分)				笔试(70 分)								总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	
得分													

第一部分　听力 (30 分)

听力测试

一 听录音,选出与你所听单词相符的图片。(5 分)

(　　)1. A. 　B. 

(　　)2. A. 　B. 

(　　)3. A. 　B. 

(　　)4. A. 　B. 

(　　)5. A. 　B. 

二 听录音,选出与你所听内容不符的一项。(5 分)

(　　)1. Sam has got some interesting cards.
A　　B　　C

(　　)2. Hainan is in the south of China.
A　　B　　C

(　　)3. My mother goes to work at eleven o'clock every night.
A　　B　　C

(　　)4. Will you take me to the park tomorrow?
A　　B　　C

(　　)5. His uncle is a farmer.
A　　B　　C

三 听录音,选出你所听到的问句的答语。(10 分)

(　　)1. A. She is a doctor.　　B. He is a worker.

(　　)2. A. I met them in June.　　B. I went there by taxi.

(　　)3. A. It's a quarter to six.　　B. I'll be home at six o'clock.

(　　)4. A. I went to Beijing.　　B. I took many photos.

(　　)5. A. Yes, I did.　　B. Of course I will.

四 听录音,根据所听内容将相关图片与发生时间连起来。(10 分)

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 　5. 

A. 9:00 a. m　　B. 7:30 a. m　　C. 3:00 p. m　　D. 9:30 a. m　　E. 5:00 p. m

第二部分　笔试 (70 分)

五 选出与所给单词画线部分发音相同的词。(10 分)

south	pocket	Saturday	watch	doctor	lunch	China	morning
house	door	black	horse	colour	back	how	

1. about: _____
2. north: _____
3. clock: _____
4. worker: _____
5. child: _____

六 读句子,选出与句中画线单词同类的一项。(5 分)

A. tired　B. driver　C. lives　D. July　E. evening

(　　)1. Children's Day is on June 1st.

(　　)2. Mum goes to work at seven o'clock every morning.

(　　)3. I was late for school yesterday.

(　　)4. My uncle is a policeman.

(　　)5. School starts at eight o'clock.

七 根据图意补全句子。(10 分)



1. I _____ _____ at seven o'clock in the morning.



2. My city is _____ _____ _____ China.

姓名　学号　密　班级　封　学校　线

3. My father is a _____ _____.



4. Let me _____ _____ _____ for him.



5. I drew a fish on a _____ _____ _____.



八 单项选择。(5分)

( )1. They are my friends. I met _____ in June.
A. they B. their C. them

( )2. I'm going to stay in Qingdao _____ two weeks.
A. at B. for C. of

( )3. Mary _____ a lovely time in Kunming last year.
A. had B. have C. has

( )4. Don't _____! I'll be home at seven o'clock.
A. worry B. worries C. worried

( )5. Mum _____ up at six o'clock every morning.
A. will get B. gets C. get

九 情景交际。(10分)

( )1. 你想知道爸爸几点回到家,你应问:
( )2. 老师想知道你假期去了哪儿,她会这样问:
( )3. 外国友人问你银川在哪儿,你应回答:
( )4. 你想知道朋友的姐姐是干什么工作的,你应问:
( )5. 有人问你现在几点了,你应回答:

A. What does your sister do?
B. It's a quarter to nine.
C. It's in the north of China.
D. What time will you be home?
E. Where did you go for the holidays?

十 阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。(10分)

(建议用时:5分钟)

There are four people in Mary's family—her father, mother, brother and Mary. Her father's name is John Smith. He goes to work at seven o'clock every morning. He is a teacher. Her mother's name is Nancy Smith. She is a policewoman. Her brother is Jack Smith. He is a middle school(中学) student. He goes to school at half past seven. Mary goes to school at a quarter to nine. She is a primary school student.

( )1. There are five people in Mary's family.
( )2. John Smith goes to work at a quarter past seven every morning.
( )3. Nancy Smith is a teacher.
( )4. Jack Smith goes to school at half past seven.
( )5. Mary is a primary school student.

十一 阅读短文,回答问题。(10分)

(建议用时:5分钟)

My name is Linda. Lily is my good friend. Her birthday is coming. She will have a party. I'm going to the party. And I'm going to give her a present. I ask my mum, "What present can I take?" She says, "What about a toy car?" "I don't think it's a good present. She has got one," I answer. "Why don't you buy her a new doll?" "That's a good idea."

1. Who is Linda's friend?
_____

2. Whose(谁的) birthday is coming?
_____

3. Will Lily have a birthday party?
_____

4. Does Lily have a toy car?
_____

5. What present will Linda give Lily?
_____

十二 小作文。(10分)

假如你是小华,你和父母去很多地方旅行过。请你把其中的一次旅行经历写信告诉你的朋友。(不少于40个单词)

_____
_____

密 封 线

期末检测卷

时间:60 分钟　满分:100 分

	听力(30 分)				笔试(70 分)								总分
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	
得　分													

第一部分　听力 (30 分)

听力测试

一 听录音,根据所听内容用 ABC 给短语的译文排序。(5 分)

1. (　)去上班　(　)去上学　(　)去图书馆
2. (　)七点半　(　)七点钟　(　)六点四十五
3. (　)读书　(　)买书　(　)写书
4. (　)放风筝　(　)做蛋糕　(　)做风筝
5. (　)休息　(　)玩得愉快　(　)举行派对

二 听录音,根据所听内容将相关信息连起来。(10 分)

a. 
b. 
c. 
d. 
e. 

1. Daming　2. Jim　3. Simon　4. Tom　5. Jack

A. 

B. 
C. 

D. 
E. 

三 听录音,选出所听问句的答语。(5 分)

(　)1. A. I'm going to the zoo.　B. He is from the UK.
(　)2. A. I had a hamburger.　B. She had noodles.
(　)3. A. By taxi.　B. Of course I will.
(　)4. A. I'll be home at 7 o'clock.　B. I borrowed a book.
(　)5. A. It's my mum's coat.　B. My mum.

四 听录音,根据短文内容判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。(10 分)

(　)1. The children went to the park together.
(　)2. They had a picnic in the park.
(　)3. Now they're planning a trip to the farm.
(　)4. They'll have lunch at a restaurant.
(　)5. They will be home at about 5 o'clock in the afternoon.

第二部分　笔试 (70 分)

五 选出与句中单词画线部分发音相同的一项。(5 分)

(　)1. It will be warm tomorrow.
A. card　B. farmer　C. quarter

(　)2. This bag is very heavy.
A. ready　B. easy　C. idea

(　)3. He went to the airport yesterday.
A. worker　B. north　C. actor

(　)4. Mum always gets up early.
A. hear　B. learn　C. wear

(　)5. What did you do last Sunday?
A. who　B. whose　C. where

六 根据图片与首字母提示完成句子。(5 分)


1. I can w_____ a story in English.


2. This is our school l_____.


3. This u_____ is very beautiful.


4. These are my p_____ and I.

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

5. We like seeing f_____ very much.



七 在横线上写出句中画线单词的反义词。(10分)

1. This pair of shoes is light. _____
2. I think he's right. _____
3. It is hard to fly a kite. _____
4. She will be home before six o'clock. _____
5. Don't forget to bring some CDs for me. _____

八 单项选择。(10分)

( )1. My brother _____ very hard every day.
A. study B. studies C. is studying

( )2. These books are _____ art.
A. of B. about C. from

( )3. My mother _____ in London yesterday.
A. arrived B. arrives C. arrive

( )4. Where _____ your uncle _____?
A. do; live B. does; lives C. does; live

( )5. This little girl can _____ English.
A. speak B. talk C. say

九 读句子,用所给单词的适当形式填空。(10分)

1. I _____ (learn) to cook last year.
2. Lingling _____ (have) got a cute cat.
3. My grandpa asked me _____ (carry) the bag.
4. We will _____ (make) a Chinese kite.
5. The children _____ (swim) in the lake now.

十 阅读短文,根据短文内容回答问题。(10分) (建议用时:5分钟)

My uncle Mr Li is forty-eight. He is an engineer(工程师). He lives in Wuhan. He has got two children. They live in a big house. There is a big TV and a new computer in his house. Mr Li usually reads books and talks with his friends on the Internet. But forty years ago, he lived in a small village. His house was small. There wasn't a TV. There wasn't a computer, either. He studied hard and made friends at school. There was no telephone or mobile phone(手机). His grandparents lived in another city then. So Mr Li wrote letters to his grandparents.

1. How old is Mr Li?

_____

2. Where does he live now?

_____

3. What does Mr Li do?

_____

4. What did he do at school?

_____

5. Did he write letters to his grandparents?

_____

十一 阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。(10分) (建议用时:5分钟)

Sam is an English boy. He comes to China with his father and mother.

He is in No. 5 Middle School. He gets up early every day. He isn't late for school. He studies hard. He speaks English very well. He often helps us with our English, and we often help him with his Chinese. After class, he likes playing football, swimming, and running. On Sundays he often helps his mother clean the house or do the shopping. He likes Chinese food very much.

( )1. He gets up late every day.
( )2. He often helps us with our English.
( )3. After class, he likes singing and playing basketball.
( )4. On Sundays he often helps his mother clean the house.
( )5. He doesn't like Chinese food.

十二 小作文。(10分)

暑假就要到了,你有何打算?想去哪儿旅游?写出来与大家分享一下吧!(不少于40个单词)

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

密 封 线



检测卷部分

月考卷一 Modules 1 ~3 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. I ate a hamburger tonight.
2. We didn't have a telephone many years ago.
3. Fish and chips is a traditional English dish.
4. Ms Smart taught foreign languages.
5. My grandpa worked in the fields.

二、1. I watched TV with my father yesterday.
2. She had milk, bread and eggs for breakfast.
3. My mother is a driver.
4. Five years ago, Mr Li taught Chinese.
5. We live in a big city now.

三、1. What did Amy have for lunch?
2. How does he go to school?
3. Where do you live now?
4. Did she make a cake yesterday?
5. What did you do there?

四、1. Xiaoming did his homework last night.
2. My grandparents live in a big house.
3. Now Mr Zhang doesn't work.
4. Did you write an email to Sam?
5. All the pupils study very hard.

答案：

一、1. C　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. A
二、1. A　2. B　3. B　4. A　5. A
三、1. B　2. A　3. A　4. B　5. B
四、1. night　2. big　3. work　4. write　5. study
五、1. C　2. A　3. D　4. E　5. B
六、1. F　2. F　3. T　4. T　5. T
七、1. C　**点拨**：由时间状语 many years ago 可知句子为一般过去时，动词 live 用过去式 lived。
2. C　**点拨**：介词后人称代词要用宾格形式。
3. A　**点拨**：由时间状语 last summer 可知，动词用过去式。
4. A　**点拨**：or 用于否定句中连接两个并列成分。
5. B　**点拨**：一般现在时中，主语是第三人称单数时，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。
6. C　**点拨**：这是一个特殊疑问句，助动词用了过去式 did，后面的动词用原形。
7. C　**点拨**：感谢某人做某事，用 Thank sb. for + 名词或动名词。。
8. C　**点拨**：like 后跟动词的 -ing 形式。
9. A　**点拨**：谈论某方面的事，用 talk about…。
10. B　**点拨**：由答语可知，问句应是同人，主语是单数，故选 B。
八、1. about animals　2. by school bus
3. in the fields　4. are learning English
5. ate two hamburgers
九、1. B　2. E　3. D　4. C　5. A
十、1. different　2. lived　3. fire　4. enough
5. television
十一、1. F　2. T　3. F　4. T　5. F
十二、范文：I'm Dongdong. I am in England now. I had English food yesterday. I had two eggs, some bread and milk for breakfast. For lunch, I had fish and chips. I ate two hamburgers and some sausages for dinner. They are delicious. I like English food very much.

期中检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. make a home library, make a cake, make a birthday card
2. five years ago, twenty years ago, many years ago
3. in the fields, on a fire, in a small village
4. talk about, study hard, a good idea
5. ride a bike, fly a kite, walk to school

二、1. My grandma didn't have a telephone many years ago.
2. I live in a big city now.
3. Ten years ago, Mr Zhang was a driver.
4. These are all books about music.
5. My brother had two sandwiches for dinner yesterday.

三、1. I lived in Shanghai.
2. I had fish and chips for dinner yesterday.
3. They're dictionaries.
4. Try this white one.
5. He studied at home.

四、1. I watched TV with my grandma last night.
2. This green bag is nice and light.
3. Daming had eggs and milk for breakfast.
4. It's easy to ride a bike.
5. Mr Wang doesn't work now. He is old.

答案：

一、1. B A C　2. C B A　3. A B C　4. B A C　5. B C A
二、1. F　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. F
三、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. A　5. B
四、1. night　2. light　3. breakfast　4. easy　5. work
五、1. T　2. F　3. T　4. F　5. F
6. F　7. T　8. F　9. T　10. T
六、1. ⓚ idea　2. ⓔ ask　3. ⓚ film
4. ⓚ card　5. ⓔ study　6. ⓜ easy
七、1. C　2. B
3. C　**点拨**："给某人某物"应为 give sth. to sb.。
4. A
5. C　**点拨**：由时间状语 five years ago 可知动词用过去式。
6. A
7. A　**点拨**：介词后跟动词的 -ing 形式。
8. C　9. C
10. B　**点拨**：be going to 后面接动词原形。
八、1. made　**点拨**：由时间状语 last Sunday 可知，应用 make 的过去式。
2. go　**点拨**：be going to 结构后跟动词原形。
3. gets　**点拨**：在一般现在时中，主语是第三人称单数，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。
4. dancing　**点拨**：like 后跟动词的 -ing 形式，即动名词。
5. have　**点拨**："想干某事"应为 want to do sth.。
九、1. couldn't; or　2. Did she learn English
3. Where did; live　4. big and light
5. What did you have
十、1. T　2. T　3. F　4. F　5. F
十一、1. have breakfast　2. tea; coffee　3. one o'clock
4. Afternoon tea　5. 5. half past seven
十二、范文：
Lucy：Mum, my dress is small.
Mum：Let's buy a new one.
Sales assistant：Can I help you?
Lucy：Yes, I want a dress.
Sales assistant：How about this one?
Lucy：It's nice. But it's too big for me.
Mum：Look at that dress. It's pink.
Lucy：Oh, it's nice. I like it.
Mum：OK. We'll take it.

月考卷二 Modules 6 ~8 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. I used my computer to get to the moon.
2. Shanghai is in the east of China.
3. —What does your father do?
—He is a worker.
4. I go swimming at half past eight in the morning.
5. I put the sticks on the paper.

二、1. Sam has got some interesting photos.
2. Haikou is in the south of China.
3. My mother goes to work at ten o'clock every night.
4. Will you take him to the park tomorrow?
5. My uncle is a farmer.

三、1. What does your mother do?
2. How did you get to the park yesterday?
3. What time is it now?
4. Where did you go for the holidays?
5. Will you help me?

四、M：Hello, I'm Danny. Today is Saturday. I get up at half past seven. Then I have breakfast. At nine o'clock in the morning, I read a book. I draw a picture at half past nine. At three o'clock in the afternoon, I fly a kite in the park. I watch TV at five o'clock. Then I have dinner.

答案：

一、1. B　2. A　3. A　4. A　5. B
二、1. C　2. A　3. B　4. B　5. A
三、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. A　5. B
四、1—B　2—A　3—D　4—C　5—E
五、1. south house hbw　2. morning dour horse
3. pocket black back　4. Saturday doctor colour
5. watch lunch China
六、1. D　2. E　3. A　4. B　5. C
七、1. have breakfast　2. in the west of　3. taxi driver
4. make a kite　5. piece of paper
八、1. C　**点拨**：谓语动词后跟人称代词的宾格作宾语。
2. B　**点拨**：时间段 two weeks 前用介词 for。
3. A　**点拨**：由时间状语 last year 可知，谓语动词用过去式。
4. A
5. B　**点拨**：主语是第三人称单数，在一般现在时中，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。
九、1. D　2. E　3. C　4. A　5. B
十、1. F　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. T
十一、1. Lily.　**点拨**：根据短文第二句可知道。
2. Lily's birthday is coming.　**点拨**：根据短文第三句可知。
3. Yes, she will.　**点拨**：根据短文第四句可知为肯定回答。
4. Yes, she does.　**点拨**：由"She has got one"可知。
5. A new doll.　**点拨**：由短文最后两句可知。
十二、范文：
Dear Amy,
Last week I went to Hangzhou with my parents. Hangzhou is in the south of China. We went there by train. We went to the West Lake. The lake is very big and beautiful. Many people went to visit it. I took many beautiful pictures. I had a lovely time there.
Love,
Xiaohua

期末检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. go to school; go to work; go to the library
2. half past seven; a quarter to seven; seven o'clock
3. write a book; buy a book; read a book
4. make a kite; make a cake; fly a kite
5. have a rest; have a lovely time; have a party

二、1. Daming took a yellow taxi to the theatre yesterday.
2. Jim goes to school at half past eight.
3. Simon is going to take photos in the park.
4. Tom will go swimming next Saturday.
5. Jack went to Hainan in July.

三、1. Where are you going this weekend, Sam?
2. What did she have for dinner?
3. How did you get there?
4. What time will you be home?
5. Who's going to the airport with you?

四、Last weekend, Lanlan, Tom and I went to the park. We had a picnic in the park. And we ate lots of delicious food. Then we played a game. We had a good time. Now we're planning a trip to the zoo. We are going to meet at 8 o'clock on Saturday morning. We're going to see many animals. We'll have lunch at a restaurant near the zoo. We will be home at about 4 o'clock in the afternoon.

答案：

一、1. B　A　C　2. A　C　B　3. C　B　A
4. C　B　A　5. A　B　C
二、1—b—A　2—c—D　3—a—B　4—e—E
5—d—C
三、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. A　5. B
四、1. T　2. T　3. F　4. T　5. F
五、1. C　2. A　3. B　4. B　5. C
六、1. write　2. library　3. umbrella　4. parents　5. films
七、1. heavy　2. wrong　3. easy　4. after　5. take
八、1. B　**点拨**：主语是第三人称单数。在一般现在时中谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。
2. B　**点拨**：about 意为"关于"。
3. A　**点拨**：由 yesterday 可知，本题时态为一般过去时。
4. C　**点拨**：主语是第三人称单数，在特殊疑问句中助动词用 does，实义动词用原形。
5. A　**点拨**："讲英语"应用动词 speak。
九、1. learnt　**点拨**：由 last year 可知此句时态为一般过去时，动词用过去式。learn 的过去式是 learnt。
2. has　**点拨**：此句为一般现在时，主语 Lingling 为第三人称单数，所以动词用三单形式。
3. to carry　**点拨**：ask sb. to do sth. 意为"要求某人做某事"。
4. make　**点拨**：此句为一般将来时，will 后接动词原形。
5. are swimming　**点拨**：此句为现在进行时，用 be 动词 + 动词 -ing 形式。
十、1. He is forty-eight.　2. He lives in Wuhan.
3. He is an engineer.
4. He studied hard and made friends at school.
5. Yes, he did.
十一、1. F　2. T　3. F　4. T　5. F
十二、范文：The summer holiday is coming. I'm going to Xinjiang. I'm going there with my parents in August. We are going to take a plane there. I'm going to climb the Tianshan Mountains and I'm going to visit the Tianchi Lake. We will have a good time there.

课时部分

Module 1

Unit 1　We lived in a small house.

一、1. B　2. C　3. A　4. C　5. B
二、1. lady　2. enough　3. television　4. Life; different
5. house　6. programme

三、1.  2.  3.  4.  5. 
6.  7.  8.  9.  10. 

（答案不唯一）

四、1. A
2. C　**点拨**：由助动词 is 可知，国家的变化是正在进行的，所以用动词 -ing 形式。
3. B　**点拨**：any 用于否定句中。
4. B　**点拨**：动词短语后面用人称代词的宾格形式作宾语。
5. C　6. C
7. C　**点拨**：由 every day 可知是习惯性动作，因此用一般现在时，由于主语是第三人称单数，故谓语动词用单三形式。
8. B
9. B　**点拨**：由 many years ago 可知否定形式应该在实义动词 have 前面加 didn't。

五、1. They didn't have enough food.
2. My grandma watched TV yesterday.
3. There was a small house ten years ago.
4. There weren't any televisions.
5. Life was very different in China many years ago.

六、1. D　2. E　3. B　4. C　5. A
方法点拨：本题用**分析推理法**解答。第 1 空由 look 和下文可推测出对话中是在谈论照片，故选 D。第 2 空由 different 及下句可推测出询问内容是有什么不同，故选 E。第 3、4 空分别由答句和问句可推测内容与教室和学生有关。第 5 空由下句 Yes, we do. 可知问句是一般疑问句，故选 A。

七、1. lived　2. live　3. was　4. are　5. was　6. is　7. listening

Unit 2　She didn't have a television.

一、1. F　2. T　3. F　4. T　5. T
二、1. night　2. radio　3. fire　4. telephone　5. field　6. write
三、1. ago; five days ago　2. many; many books　3. hour; half an hour　4. year; many years ago　5. tall; a tall boy　（答案不唯一）
方法点拨：本题用**加法记忆法**解答。在单词前加一个字母可以构成一个新单词。如 a + go = ago　m + any = many　h + our = hour　y + ear = year　t + all = tall
四、1. B　2. C　3. A　4. E　5. D
五、1. C　**点拨**：last night 是表示过去的时间，所以句子时态为一般过去时，动词用过去式。
2. B　**点拨**：or 用于否定句中，连接两个或多个并列的成分。
3. A　**点拨**：句中的时间表示过去，主语是第二人称，故选 A。
4. C　**点拨**：单词 old 的音标以元音音素开头，故用 an 表示“一个”。
5. B　**点拨**：第一个句子是一般现在时，主语是复数，故谓语动词用原形；第二个句子开头表示的是过去的时间，故谓语动词用过去式。
6. B　**点拨**：由 last year 可知前句为一般过去时，由 now 可知后句为一般现在时，主语为复数，故选 B。
7. C　**点拨**：由主语 my father 和时间状语 yesterday 可知此处否定形式为 wasn't，故选 C。
8. B　**点拨**：由时间可知动词用过去式。
9. C　**点拨**：before 意为“以前”，表示过去的时间，所以系动词用过去式，flowers 是复数，故选 C。
10. C
六、1. D　2. E　3. A　4. C　5. B　6. F
七、1. There weren't any cars.　**点拨**：在 there be 句型的否定句中 were 变成否定形式 weren't，some 用于肯定句，否定句中用 any。
2. We didn't have lots of food.
3. I watched TV yesterday.　**点拨**：yesterday 为过去的时间，故改写时需将动词变过去式。
4. Did he live in a small village twenty years ago?
点拨：此句变一般疑问句，需将 lived 变原形，并在句首加助动词 did。
5. Where did you work last Sunday?　**点拨**：由 in the fields 可知询问工作地点，故用特殊疑问词 where，主语为 I，应改为 you。work 为实义动词，故上语前加 did。

八、1. A　2. C　3. B　4. B　5. C
九、1. F　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. T
方法点拨：本题用**分析推理和关键词定位法**解答。第 1 小题，由短文中第三句话 There was a small park many years ago. 可知过去有一个小公园。故此句有误。第 2 小题由 And in the park, there is a lake with some ducks on it. 可推测出公园里有湖。第 3 小题关键词是 high buildings，第 4 小题关键词是 trees，第 5 小题关键词是 cars，由关键词可以从短文中找到对应的句子，通过比较、分析可以判断出答案。

Module 1　能力过关练

听力材料：
一、1. There is a sheep in the field.
2. We live a happy life.
3. I am a teacher. I work at school.
4. That's a radio. You can listen to it.
5. —What did you write, Mike?
—I wrote emails to my friend.

二、1. We've got lots of food.
2. They lived in a small house ten years ago.
3. My mum is cooking on a fire.
4. We are watching a programme about schools.
5. The old man worked in the fields yesterday.

三、1. I watched a television programme about England last night.
2. We lived in a small house.
3. An old man talked about his life.
4. There weren't many buses.
5. She didn't have a television or a telephone.
6. She couldn't jump or walk.

四、Many years ago，there weren't any buses or cars. Jack lived in a small house. He didn't have enough food. But now there are lots of buses and cars. Jack lives in a big house. He has lots of food.

答案：
一、1. B　2. C　3. A　4. A　5. C
二、3　4　2　5　1
三、1. C　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. B　6. B
四、1. weren't　2. lived　3. didn't　4. are　5. lives
五、1. There weren't many buses many years ago. There are lots of buses now.
2. There was a small tree ten years ago. There is a big tree now.
3. There was a cat five years ago. There are three cats now.

书读写卷绿
六、1. She didn't talk about her life many years ago.
2. My grandpa didn't work in the fields yesterday.
3. She didn't cook on a fire.
4. She didn't have a television or a telephone.
5. She couldn't read or write.　**点拨**：一般过去时态的肯定句变否定句时，应在实义动词前面加 didn't，动词过去式应变为原形。could 是情态动词，否定形式是 couldn't。

七、1. two　2. small　dirty　3. didn't have　4. car　5. seventy

八、1. B　**点拨**：由短文中 There was a small tree beside the house. 可知。
2. C　**点拨**：由短文中 They didn't have enough food or clothes. 可知。
3. A　**点拨**：由短文中 There weren't any televisions or telephones. 可知。
4. C　**点拨**：由短文中 They can use the computer, too. 可知。
5. A　**点拨**：由短文中第一句 The world is changing very fast. 可知。

九、范文
Hello, I'm Lingling. Five years ago, we lived in a small and old house. There was only one television in my home. There wasn't a computer. But now we live in a big and bright house. I have a computer. I can learn a lot from it. There are two televisions in my home. My father has a nice car. He often drives me to school.

Module 2

Unit 1　She learnt English.

一、1. teacher(教师)　2. writer(作家)
3. dancer(舞蹈演员)　4. driver(司机)
5. farmer(农民)
方法点拨：本题用**构词记忆法**解答。构词法可以帮我们记忆相关联的单词。英文中有些单词加上后缀 -er 就变成了“从事某种职业的人”。根据例子，在动词词尾加上后缀 -er 就可以。如果动词以 e 结尾，需去掉 e 再加 -er。

二、1. B　**点拨**：由时间状语 ten years ago(十年前)可知，动词应用过去式。
2. A　**点拨**：许多“应为 a lot of 或 lots of。
3. A　**点拨**：由 languages 可知不能用 a；any 用于疑问句或否定句中。
4. C　**点拨**：第一空在助动词的否定形式 didn't 后，用动词原形；第二空表示动作正在进行，故用动词的 -ing 形式。
5. C　6. B

三、1. A　2. B　3. B　4. A　5. B
方法点拨：本题用**关键词对应图片法**解答。即抓住句子中的关键词，根据关键词找出相应的图片。第 1 小题关键词是 learning English，故选图 A。第 2 小题关键词是 brother，故选图 B。第 3 小题关键词是 watch TV，故选图 B；第 4 小题关键词是 grandparents，故选图 A；第 5 小题关键词是 driver，故选图 B。

四、1. D　2. A　3. E　4. C　5. B
五、1. A　2. C　3. A　4. A　5. C
六、1. listened to music　2. wrote a letter　3. taught Chinese

七、1. C　**点拨**：由 My name is Jack. I am a pupil. 可知答案。
2. B　**点拨**：由 My father was a worker ten years ago. 可知答案。
3. A　**点拨**：由 My mother is a doctor. 可知。
4. B　**点拨**：由 She wrote a book last year. 可知。
5. B　**点拨**：由 My father was a worker ten years ago. But he is a driver now. 可知。

Unit 2　Mr Li was a teacher.

一、1. √；aw　2. √；ass　3. ×；ar　4. √；al　5. √；air(答案不唯一)
二、1. pupil；hard　2. teacher；English　3. dancer；danced
三、1. B　**点拨**：主语是第三人称单数，第一句叙述的是过去的年龄，所以系动词用过去式 was；第二句叙述的是现在的年龄，所以系动词用 is。
2. A　**点拨**：like 后动词用 -ing 形式。
3. C　**点拨**：单词 English 的读音以元音音素开头，所以用 an。
4. C　**点拨**：由 now 可知他正在学英语，故用现在分词。
5. C　**点拨**：由时间状语 yesterday 可知，动词要用过去式。
6. B　**点拨**：由前句 was 可知，句子为一般过去时，故后句中动词也要用过去式。
7. A
8. C　**点拨**：由答句 Yes, he did. 可知，助动词应该用 did。
9. C　**点拨**：—般疑问句以 does 开头，否定回答应该是 doesn't。
10. B　**点拨**：由 then 可知，芳芳过去学习外语很努力，故动词要用过去式。

四、1. E　2. A　3. D　4. A　5. B

五、1. reading　**点拨**：like 后面跟动词的 -ing 形式。
2. swim　**点拨**：learn to do sth. 学习做某事。不定式符号 to 后跟动词原形。
3. studies　**点拨**：在一般现在时中，主语是第三人称单数，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。
4. work　**点拨**：doesn't 后面的动词用原形。
5. played

六、1. She didn't go to the park yesterday.
She made a cake yesterday.
2. He didn't watch TV yesterday.
He played basketball yesterday.

七、1. B　2. E　3. D　4. A　5. C
方法点拨：本题用**命令结合法**解答。做题时先通读对话，理解句意，再通过问句或答句找出对应的句子。第 1 空上句疑问词为 who，故答句回答 grandma。第 2 空上句疑问词是 why，故答句回答原因，选 E。第 3 空上句的问题含义是英语吗？由 Yes, 可知她学过英语。第 4 空由下句可知是询问她现在住哪里？故选 A。第 5 空用排除法或后一句话，可知选 C。

八、1—C　2—A　3—D　4—E　5—B

Module 2　能力过关练

听力材料：
一、1. Is this your grandpa?
2. Chen Xiao is a good pupil.
3. I study very hard every day.
4. Her sister was a dancer.
5. Did she learn any foreign languages?

二、1. He goes to school by school bus.
2. He watched TV yesterday.
3. Tutu likes learning Maths.
4. Mr Wang was a driver ten years ago.
5. The little boy drank some water.

三、1. My mother wrote a book last year.
2. Mr Zhang doesn't work now.
3. He taught Science at school.
4. Her brother was thirteen then.
5. He likes working in the hospital.

四、1. **M**：What did Daming do yesterday?
W：He played basketball.
2. **M**：How old was Li Wei then?
W：He was only six then.
3. **M**：Who are they, Lingling?
W：They are my grandparents.
4. **W**：What is your grandpa doing, Tom?
M：He is learning English.
5. **M**：Was Mike's mother an English teacher then?
W：Yes, she was.

答案：
一、1. C　2. C　3. A　4. B　5. C
方法点拨：本题用**听关键词法**解答。听录音时，先听清关键词，然后对比选择答案。如第 1 小题录

音内容是 Is this your grandpa? 关键词是 grandpa，故选 C。

二、1. C　2. A　3. B　4. C　5. A

三、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. A　5. B

方法点拨：本题用**三步两遍听音法**解答。第一步：读句子，预估题意。第二步：听录音，捕捉关键信息。第三步：第二遍听录音，检查句子与录音是否一致即可。

四、1. F　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. F

五、1. Five years ago, she learnt Music. Now she is learning Computer.

2. Two years ago, they walked to school. Now they go to school by bus.

3. Ten years ago, she learnt to dance. Now she is a dancer.

读写专练

六、1. My father wrote a book yesterday.

2. My grandma cooked fish yesterday.

3. Sam watched TV yesterday.

4. Mr Smart taught a foreign language yesterday.

5. Daming studied very hard then.

七、1. F　2. F　3. T　4. T　5. F

八、1. C　2. A　3. C　**方法点拨**：1－3 小题用**关键词定位法**解答。即抓住题干中的关键词，代入文章中找到与关键词相关的原句，再仔细阅读该句子，选出答案。前 1～3 小题都可用题干中的关键词“lived”“post office”“minutes”找出文中对应的关键信息。

4. B　5. A　**方法点拨**：4－5 小题用**推理猜测法**解答。根据短文最后一句话可推测出年轻人的书写非常糟糕，故第 4 小题选 B。从文中对话可推测出年轻人帮助了 Mrs Brown，故第 5 小题选 A。

九、**范文**：

My Grandparents

Many years ago, my grandma was a dancer. She danced very well. She danced in many Chinese cities. My grandpa was a teacher. He taught Maths. He liked working at school. Now they don't work. They live a happy life.

Module 3

Unit 1　She had eggs and sausages.

一、1. lunch　2. hamburger　3. say　4. English

5. traditional

二、1. breakfast　2. email　3. sandwiches

4. fish; chips; lunch　5. hamburgers

6. traditional

三、1. B　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. A

四、1. from　2. have　3. about　4. and　5. says

五、1. C　2. E　3. A　4. D　5. B

方法点拨：本题用**阅答结合法**解答。解题时结合图片理解问句和答句的意思，即可选出对应的问句或答句。例如：题 1 由答句 Yes, she does. 可知上句为一般疑问句，以 Does 开头，谈论内容与 hamburger 有关，故选 C。题 2 看图可知选 E。题 3 和 email 相关，由答句可知问句为一般疑问句，故选 A。

六、1. milk; eggs; apples　2. rice; fish; tofu

3. breakfast　4. lunch　5. dumplings; apples

方法点拨：本题用**问题寻找法**解答：首先要读懂问题，然后根据问题寻找表格中对应的信息并回答。例如：题 1 询问她周一早餐吃什么，从表格中可知周一早餐是：milk, eggs, apples

七、1. What did; have　2. What did; have

3. No; she doesn't　4. She had a sandwich.

八、1. F　**点拨**：由 Today I had two sandwiches and some milk for lunch. 可知。

2. T　**点拨**：由 She likes Chinese food very much. 可知。

3. F　**点拨**：由 My mum is going to buy a big cake for me. 可知。

4. T　**点拨**：由 I'm going to eat delicious Chinese food. 可知。

5. T　**点拨**：由 My name is Wang Hai. 和 Tomorrow is my birthday. 可知。

Unit 2　Sam ate four hamburgers.

一、where; wear　pear　there

ear; hear　near　here

head; bread　sweater　breakfast

see; teacher　meat　meet

二、1. fish　2. pear　3. rice　4. foot　5. cook　6. meat

7. give　8. night

三、1. A　**点拨**：主语 Sam 是第三人称单数，在一般现在时中，动词要用第三人称单数形式。

2. B　**点拨**：be going to 表示“将要，打算”。

3. A　**点拨**：短语“把……给……”应为 give… to…

4. C　**点拨**：主语 Amy 是第三人称单数，由答语可知选 C。

5. C

四、1. B　2. B　3. A　4. A　5. A

五、1. got　2. gave　3. cook　4. have　5. ate　6. misses

六、1. D　2. C　3. B　4. A　5. E

方法点拨：本题用**问答结合法**解答。先通读并理解各问句和答句的意思，再通过问答结合法选出对应的问答句。题 1 由 How many hamburgers 可知答句回答以体现数量，故选 D。题 2 是一般疑问句，由 Does 可知答句为 C。题 3 询问你将要做什么？故答句为 B。题 4 是一般疑问句，由 Did 可知答句为 A。题 5 询问早餐吃了什么？故答句选 E。

七、1. A　**点拨**：由书信最后的落款可知写信人是 Danny。

2. A　**点拨**：由信中第一句可知答案。

3. C　**点拨**：由 She had juice and noodles. 可知。

4. A　**点拨**：由 Tomorrow is my birthday. 可知。

5. C　**点拨**：由 My mum is going to make a cake for me. 可知。

Module 3 能力过关练

听说专练

听力材料：

一、1. I want a hamburger.

2. Daming is having lunch.

3. I had some bread for breakfast.

4. —Do you like sandwiches?　—Yes, I do.

5. —What did she have for lunch?

—She had fish and chips.

二、1. I've got an email from my mum.

2. Tutu had some fish yesterday.

3. My sister doesn't like chips.

4. I ate rice for lunch last night.

5. Tonight Grandma is going to cook noodles for me.

三、1. Does Amy like Chinese food?

2. Mum bought some apples yesterday.

3. What did you have for lunch?

4. Yesterday she had an English breakfast.

5. She doesn't like hamburgers.

四、　My name is Sam. I had eggs and milk for breakfast at school. My brother Tom had some sausages for breakfast. Jack had some noodles. He gave his banana to Tom. Feifei likes noodles, too. My mother says she is going to cook fish and chips tonight. It's a traditional English dish.

答案：

一、1. B　2. A　3. A　4. B　5. A

方法点拨：本题用**关键词对应图片法**解答。第一遍听录音时，抓住所听到的关键词，把关键词与相应的图片进行匹配；第二遍听录音时，检查图片与所听内容是否相符。

二、3　1　4　5　2

三、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. B　5. B

四、1. A　2. B　3. C　4. B　5. B

方法点拨：本题用**三步两遍听音法**解答。第一步：阅读题干，预估题意；第二步：第一遍听录音，边听边做，注意捕捉关键信息；第三步：第二遍听录音，检查核对答案。

五、1. I had a hamburger for breakfast.

2. I had some rice and chicken for lunch.

3. She had dumplings for dinner.

4. He had fish and chips.

5. He had eggs and sausages.

读写专练

六、1. —What did Amy have for lunch?

—She had a hamburger and French fries.

2. —What did Sam have for dinner?

—He had fish and chips.

七、1. C　2. B　3. D　4. A　5. E

方法点拨：本题用**联系上下文法**解题。首先要结合给出的句子了解对话中谈论的话题，然后联系上下文补充对话。第 1 空由答句可知为一般疑问句，且以 be 动词开头，故选 C，第 2/3/4 空，根据答句可知询问的内容是早中晚餐吃什么？最后一空由答句可知询问的是水果，故选 E。

八、1. F　2. T　3. F　4. F　5. F

方法点拨：本题用**信息定位法**，即抓住题干中的关键信息，代入文章中找到与关键信息相关的原句，仔细阅读该句子，对比判断是否一致。题 1 由 breakfast 可定位句子 She had some eggs for breakfast. 对比可判断题中句子错误。题 2 文中有原句，故正确。题 3 由 got home 可定位句子 They got home at eleven o'clock. 与文意不符，故错误。题 4 由 lunch 可定位句子 They had rice, meat, fish and potatoes for lunch. 与文意不符，故错误。题 5 由 gave an apple 可定位句子 Her brother Jim gave an apple to her. 与文意不符，故错误。

九、**范文**：

My name is Lingling. Now let me tell you something about food. I had eggs, bread and milk for breakfast yesterday. I like fruits, so after breakfast, I ate an apple. It's good for our health. I had rice, fish and vegetables for lunch. I like fish very much. In the evening, I had noodles for dinner.

Module 4

Unit 1 Let's make a home library.

一、1. library cards　2. student　3. shelf　4. library

5. dictionary　6. CD

方法点拨：本题用**三步选词填空法**解答。第一步：浏览全句，掌握基本信息；第二步：结合图片，确定选词；第三步：将图片所对应的单词填写在合适的位置。

二、1. found; sent; asked　2. small; light; heavy

3. us; them; him　4. student; driver; dancer

5. dictionaries; computers; sports

方法点拨：本题用**归类记忆法**解答。根据单词的类别或词性将单词进行归类。例如：1 小题所给单词是 got，是动词的过去式，选项中只有 found、sent、asked 是过去式；4 小题所给单词是 teacher，是职业，选项中 student、driver、dancer 符合要求。5 小题所给单词是 animals，是名词复数，选项中 dictionaries、computers、sports 符合要求。

三、1. in　2. on; about　3. with　4. for　5. to

四、1. C　**点拨**：动词 put 后跟代词的宾格形式作宾语。

2. B　**点拨**：由时间状语 yesterday 可知，动词应用过去式，“常某物给某人”应为“send sth. to sb.”。

3. A　**点拨**：Let's 后跟动词原形。

4. B　**点拨**：“要求某人干某事”应为 ask sb. to do sth.。

5. C　**点拨**：根据系动词 are 可知，应用可数名词复数，而 dictionary 的复数形式是变 y 为 i，加-es。

五、1. F　2. T　3. F　4. T　5. T

六、1. B　2. D　3. C　4. A

七、1. haven't got　**点拨**：have got 变否定形式为 haven't got。

2. Where are the books　**点拨**：由画线部分可知提问的是：关于运动的书在哪里？特殊疑问词用 where。

3. Can you

4. What are　**点拨**：画线部分为 dictionaries，提问的是这些大书是什么？特殊疑问词用 what。

5. Let's put these books on the shelf.

八、1. C　2. B　3. B　4. C　5. A　6. A

方法点拨：本题用**关键信息搜寻法**解答。即带着问题中的关键信息从文中寻找答案。题 1 关键信息是 the books about science，文中对应的句子是 The books about science are on Shelf C. 故选 C。题 2 关键信息是 the books about English，题 3 关键信息是 the books about animals，从文中寻找原句即可。题 4 关键词是 library，从文中第二、三句可知答案。题 5 关键信息是 storybooks，对应的句子是 If you like stories，you can find story books on Shelf A。题 6 关键信息是 borrow books，与文中最后一句对比可知答案。

Unit 2　We can find information from books and CDs.

一、1. F　2. F　3. T　4. F　5. T　6. F

二、1. B　2. B　3. A　4. C　5. C

三、1. do　2. for　3. about　4. from　5. have

四、1. C　**点拨**：由句中 an 可知，后面跟一个读音以元音音素开头的单词。

2. B　3. A

4. C　**点拨**：as well 是副词短语，相当于 too，一般放在句末。

5. B

五、1. an English book　2. gets information

3. did a science project　4. make a home library

5. on this topic

六、1. D　2. E　3. A　4. B　5. C

七、1. Where　2. on　3. here　4. also　5. library

6. card　**方法点拨**：本题用**分析推理法**解答。首先通读对话，了解人物和对话内容。然后根据对话内容分析推理确定词，补全句子。填完后再读一遍复查前后是否连贯。第 1、2 空可由对话内容分析出填 Where 和 on，第 3 空填 here，句意明确。第 4 空可用排除法，第 5、6 空可由对话的人物分析推理出为 library card。

八、1. C　**点拨**：由 I will go there, too. 可知。

2. A　**点拨**：由 She likes reading books in it. 可知。

3. C　**点拨**：由 She's in the library. 可知。

4. A　**点拨**：由 I want to find a book about China. 可知。

5. A　**点拨**：由 I am going to the school library. 和 I will go there, too. 可知。

Module 4 能力过关练

听说专练

听力材料：

一、1. —What's that?　—It's a dictionary.

2. I have a good idea.　3. My bag is heavy.

4. Give me a card.

5. Let's go to see a film.

二、1. Let's go to the park.
2. These are all books about music.
3. We are going to do a science project about animals.
4. You can find footballs on Shelf C.
5. We've got books for students.

三、M: Excuse me. Where are the books about sports, please?
W: They're on Shelf A.
M: But I can't find the book I want.
W: Do you know the name of the book?
M: Yes, its name is *How to Play Basketball*.
W: Well, let me help you.

四、1. Let's make a home library.
2. There are many ways to get there.
3. These books are in the wrong place.
4. That's a good idea.
5. These are the library cards for the children.

答案:
一、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B
二、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
三、2 6 3 5 1 4
四、1. library 2. ways 3. wrong 4. idea 5. cards
五、1. —Where can I find dictionaries?
—You can find them on Shelf B.
2. —Where can I find the books about animals?
—You can find them on Shelf C.
3. —Where can I find the books about sports?
—You can find them on Shelf D.
4. —Where can I find CDs?
—You can find them on Shelf E.

读写专练
六、1. F 2. C 3. D 4. E 5. A 6. B
七、1. books 2. making 3. library 4. idea 5. heavy 6. science/sports 7. cards 8. children 9. ask 10. come
方法点拨:此题用句意填词法解答。首先要通读全文,结合句意和首字母提示确定合适的单词填空。如第一句,由首字母 b 及第四句可推测寄给孩子们的可能是 books,故 2、3 空为 make a home library,第 4 空为 idea。由 dictionaries 可推测由 heavy。第 6 空由后面的 art,animals 可推测为课程类单词 science/sports。
八、1. These are the books about Chinese. Let's put them on Shelf F.
2. These are CDs. Let's listen to music.
九、1. F 点拨:由 Tomorrow is Amy's birthday. 可知。
2. F 点拨:由 Let's go to the supermarket. 可知。
3. F 点拨:由 Where are dolls? They are on Shelf E. 可知。
4. F 点拨:由 Where are pens? They are on Shelf D. 可知。
5. T 点拨:由 Are bananas on Shelf H? No, they are on Shelf G. 可知。
十、1. in the dictionary 2. train information
3. in the newspaper 4. English history
5. at the zoo
十一、范文:

Our School Library

There is a big library in our school. There are lots of books in it. You can read books in the library. You can take the books home, too. But you must return the books in two weeks. I often borrow the books about English from the library. Because I'm not good at English and they can help me.

Module 5

Unit 1 It's big and light.

一、1. heavy 2. broken 3. pockets 4. ride 5. wheels
二、1. light 2. easy 3. new 4. white 5. small
三、1. B 点拨:"take + 某物 + to + 某地"表示"带某物到某地"。
2. C 点拨:one 在句中指代 bag。
3. A 点拨:sth. is easy for sb. to do 意为"某事对某人来说容易做"。
4. C 点拨:动词后面跟人称代词的宾格形式作宾语。
5. B 点拨:pencils 为复数,故 be 动词用 are。
四、1. A 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B
五、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B
六、1. It's hard to fly a kite.
2. This black umbrella is nice.
3. I'll buy you a new coat.
4. My blue shoes are broken.
5. You can put your books in the bag.
方法点拨:本题用穿针引线法解答。连词成句题先看标点,如果标点符号是"."那就是针鼻子(主语)后面带着一条线(动词 + 宾语 + 介词短语/状语)。
七、1. young; old 2. are broken; are new
3. is heavy; is light
八、1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. C

Unit 2 It's too big for you.

一、1. T; oa 2. F; ea 3. F; oo 4. T; oy 5. T; igh 6. T; ee
二、1. D 2. E 3. A 4. C 5. B
三、1. big; small 2. heavy; light 3. easy; hard
四、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. C
五、1. at 2. to 3. on 4. for 5. with
六、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F
七、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C
八、1. new 2. small 3. hard 4. well 5. easy
九、1. B 点拨:one 指代上文的 dress。
2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C

Module 5 能力过关练

听说专练
听力材料:
一、1. light 2. lovely 3. pocket 4. easy 5. take
二、1. This T-shirt is too big for the monkey.
2. Let's make a birthday card for Sam.
3. Playing basketball is hard for him.
4. My kite is so nice.
5. The white bag is heavy.
三、1. Sam's bag is small and light.
2. Mary's sweater is new and beautiful.
3. My cat is fat and lovely.
4. Tom's shoes are nice but dirty.
5. This kite is big, but it looks old.
四、W: I have two new dresses. My sister bought them for me. The green one is long. It's very nice. The black one is short. It's got a monkey on it. It's very cute. I like them very much.

答案:
一、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C
二、1. B 2. C 3. E 4. A 5. D
方法点拨:本题用关键词对应图片法解答。第一遍听录音时,抓住所听各题的关键词,然后把关键词对应到相应的图片上;第二遍听录音时,核对句子与所选图片是否匹配。
三、1. G; C 2. H; E 3. J; A 4. B; F 5. D; I
四、1. × 2. √ 3. × 4. × 5. √
五、1. Look at the hat. It's too small for her.
2. Look at the bag. It's light for him.
3. Look at the dress. It's nice for her.
4. Look at the coat. It's too big for him.
六、1. The kite is big. It's hard to fly.
2. The bike is nice. It's easy to ride.

读写专练
七、1. Is the skirt short? No, it isn't.
2. Is the basketball new? Yes, it is.
3. Is the hat big? Yes, it is.
八、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. E 5. D
九、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
十、范文:

My Schoolbag

I have a big schoolbag. It's blue. It's got a lovely white rabbit on it. It's got four pockets. There are so many books in it now. It's very heavy. It's old and broken, but I like it very much.

Module 6

Unit 1 I went there last year.

一、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. A
方法点拨:本题用归类比较法解答。首先观察每组单词,分析词义和词性,通过比较,进行归类,排除不同类的单词。例如:第 1 小题中 south 和 west 都是表示方位的名词,而 moon 是表示事物名称的名词,故选 moon。
二、1. south 南方 2. there 那里 3. year 年
4. moon 月亮 5. west 西方
方法点拨:本题用整体记忆法解答。将单词中的字母组合作为一个整体来看,然后联想包含这个字母组合的单词,更换首字母变成新单词。如 mouth 可将 outh 看成整体联想到 south。
三、1. moon 2. get 3. June 4. remember 5. parents 6. west 7. stayed
四、1. A 点拨:情态动词 can 后跟动词原形。
2. B 点拨:由时间状语 yesterday 可知,谓语动词用过去式。
3. C 点拨:child 的复数形式为 children。由 three 可知用 child 的复数形式。
4. A 点拨:some 和 any 既可以修饰可数名词复数又可以修饰不可数名词,但是 *some* 用于肯定句中,any 用于否定句或疑问句中;much 修饰不可数名词。
5. C 6. B
7. A 点拨:一般过去时的一般疑问句"Did + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?."
8. A 点拨:月份前用介词 in。
9. A 点拨:Yinchuan 为地点,故特殊疑问词用 where。
五、1. D 2. B 3. C 4. E 5. A
六、1. Qingdao; swam in the sea
2. Shanghai; visited my grandparents
3. Nanjing; took some photos
七、1. E 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. A
八、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

Unit 2 She visited the Tianchi Lake.

一、1. morning 2. house 3. Saturday 4. north 5. three
二、1. west; rest; best 2. make; lake; take; cake 3. home; come; some 4. fast; past; last
三、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C
四、1. C 点拨:由时间状语 last week 可知,谓语动词用过去式形式。
2. B 3. B
4. C 点拨:in the + 方位 + of + 地点表示"在某地的某个方位"。
5. B 点拨:由答语可知,提问的是地点,故用特殊疑问词 where。
6. A 点拨:由 be 动词 are 可知答案应选复数形式 photos。
7. B 点拨:for 后面可接一段时间,on 后面接星期几,at 后面接具体的时间。
8. B 点拨:由 yesterday 可知助动词应该用过去式 did。
9. B 点拨:此句为过去时态的一般疑问句,用"Yes,主语 + did. 或 No,主语 + didn't."回答。
10. B 点拨:由 be 动词 are 可知答案是复数形式 horses。
五、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B
方法点拨:本题用问答结合法解答。先通读并理解问句和各答句的意思,再通过问答结合选出对应的答句。此题中的问句都是特殊疑问句,回答时应根据特殊疑问词回答。
六、5 8 2 4 1 6 7 3
七、1. north 2. It's in the west of China.
3. It's in the east of China.
4. It's in the south of China.
八、1. What did you do 2. Where is
3. climbed the Tianshan Mountains
4. I went to Beijing. 5. Did she have a lovely time?
九、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

Module 6 能力过关练

听说专练
听力材料:
一、1. Bob has got some interesting photos.
2. M: I rode a horse yesterday.
3. We went to the zoo and saw some pandas.
4. Miss Zhang stayed in Beijing for a week.
5. W: I used my computer to see a film last night.
二、1. Look! Lily has got some pictures.
2. Last year I went to Chengdu with my parents.
3. They are photos of some children.
4. It's in the south of Shandong.
5. My parents visit here every year.
三、1. Last June I went to Xinjiang.
2. It's in the south of China.
3. My cousins visited Beijing last year.
4. Did you go with your grandparents?
5. I had a lovely time here.
四、 Last summer, Lily went to Qingdao with her parents. Qingdao is in the east of China. They went there by train. The weather was not very hot there. She swam in the sea every day. They ate lots of fish. They stayed there for eight days. They had a good time there.

答案:
一、2 4 1 5 3
二、1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F
三、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A
方法点拨:本题用对比听音法解答。做题时,应快速读题,对比分析两个选项中的不同之处,然后听录音时根据录音中的关键词找出相应的句意即可。
四、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C
五、1. Lingling went to Hainan last year. She went there with her uncle.
2. Daming went to Hangzhou last July. He went there with his mother.
六、1. Jim went to Shanghai. It's in the east of China.
2. Lingling went to Chengdu. It's in the west of China.
3. Amy went to Hainan. It's in the south of China.
4. Daming went to Harbin. It's in the north of China.

读写专练
七、1. Where 2. went 3. with 4. did 5. did 6. in 7. do 8. rode 9. climbed 10. time
八、1. Did you go with your sister?
2. We stayed with my grandmother for two days.
3. I visited my friend last year.
4. They are in the west of China.
5. How did you go there?

九、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. A
十、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
十一、范文：

My Favourite Place

My favourite place is Beijing. Last year I went to Beijing with my parents. Beijing is in the north of China. It's the capital of China. There are lots of beautiful places in Beijing. We visited the Great Wall and the Summer Palace. We stayed there for a week. We had a lovely time there.

Module 7

Unit 1 My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning.

一、1. evening 2. early 3. worker 4. factory 5. ten 6. father （答案不唯一）
二、1. policeman; seven o'clock 2. goes to work 3. nurse; at half past ten 4. nine; every 5. a taxi driver; He; five
三、1. C 点拨：主语是第三人称单数，特殊疑问句中助动词用第三人称单数形式，实义动词用原形。 2. B 点拨：主语是复数，所以谓语动词用原形。 3. A 点拨：具体的时间点前用介词 at。 4. B 点拨：主语是第三人称单数，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。由 every morning 可知此句用一般现在时。 5. C 点拨：in a factory 意为“在工厂里”。 6. B 点拨：几点半用“half past + 数字”表示。 7. B 点拨：Will you + 动词原形 + 其他？表示“你将要做……吗？”。 8. C 点拨：表示在几点用介词 at。 9. C 点拨：由 at eleven o'clock every night 可知时间很晚。 10. A 点拨：由 your father 可知答句主语用 he。
四、1. C 2. B 3. E 4. D 5. A
方法点拨：本题用**两套锦囊法**解答。先通读并理解各问句和答句的意思，再通过问答结合选出对应的问答句。掌握特殊疑问句中的特殊疑问词为解题的关键，who 询问人，where 询问地点，what 询问什么，when 询问时间，how 询问方式。
五、1. Mike's father is a bus driver.
2. What does your mother do?
3. I'll take you there at two o'clock.
4. He goes to work at six every morning.
5. He is a worker in a factory.
六、1. D 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C

Unit 2 I'll be home at seven o'clock.

一、1. teach 2. clock 3. know 4. quarter
二、1. six o'clock; school 2. seven; have breakfast 3. to six; play basketball 4. half past eight; bed
三、1. B 点拨：主语是第三人称单数，所以谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。 2. A 点拨：a quarter to/past + 数字，表示“几点差(过)一刻”。 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. C
四、1. start 点拨：will 后跟动词原形。 2. went 点拨：由时间状语 last night 可知，谓语动词用过去式。 3. worry 点拨：祈使句的否定形式为“Don't + 动词原形 + (其他)！”。 4. gets 点拨：主语是第三人称单数，在一般现在时中，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。 5. work 点拨：go to work 为固定短语，表示“去上班”。
五、1. B 2. C 3. E 4. D 5. A
六、1. School starts at eight o'clock.
2. What time does your sister go to school?
3. Do you go to bed at nine o'clock every evening?
4. I will be home at eight o'clock.
5. Are you going to be late?
七、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. F
八、画图略。 Tom; 5:00 Dad; 6:00 Sam; 5:45 Mum; 5:30
九、1. taxi driver; six o'clock; seven o'clock
2. doctor; a quarter to eight; half past six

Module 7 能力过关练

听说专练
听力材料：
一、1. evening 2. early 3. worker 4. quarter 5. sorry
二、1. We have lunch at twelve o'clock.
2. My sister is an English teacher.
3. Mr Liu works in a factory.
4. We're going to play football at five o'clock.
5. It's a quarter to six now.
三、 It's Tuesday. I'm at school. My sister is in the park. She is playing with my grandparents. They will be home at half past ten. My brother is at school too. My brother and I will be home at a quarter to twelve. My mother is at work. She will be home at half past eleven. But my father is at home now. He is cooking lunch for us.
四、 This is Wang Lei's Saturday. At eight o'clock in the morning, he does his homework. He flies a kite in the park at half past ten. He has lunch at twelve at home. In the afternoon, he plays football with his friends. He watches TV for twenty minutes in the evening.

答案：
一、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B
二、5 2 4 1 3
三、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
四、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A
五、1. —What does he do?
—He's a policeman. He goes to work at six o'clock.
2. —What does he do?
—He's a doctor. He goes to work at half past eight.
3. —What does she do?
—She's a teacher. She goes to work at a quarter past seven.
4. —What does he do?
—He's a worker. He goes to work at a quarter to four.

读写专练
六、1—C 2—A 3—B 4—E 5—D
方法点拨：本题用**信息完位法**解答。即快速阅读短文，并搜索出题目中的关键词，通过信息定位找出句子中对应的时间，连线即可。如搜索 get up，定位到句子“I get up at half past six in the morning.”就可以连线。
七、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B
方法点拨：此题用**理解题意法**解答。首先要理解题目中问题的含义，然后根据问题寻找对应的答案。题 1 询问王叔叔的职业；题 2 询问王叔叔骑自行车去工厂花费多长时间；题 3 询问王叔叔通常什么时候离开家；题 4 询问传今天是否要迟到。理解题意后到文中找对应的信息即可。
八、1. Sunday 2. No; she doesn't
3. has lunch; twelve 4. Linda 5. Yes; it is.
九、范文：There are three people in my family. They are my father, my mother and I. My father is a doctor. He goes to work at half past seven in the morning. He will be home at six o'clock. My mother is an English teacher. She gets up at six o'clock. Then she cooks breakfast for us. She goes to work at eight o'clock. She will be home at seven o'clock. I'm a pupil. I go to school at eight o'clock. I have lunch at school. I will be home at half past five. My parents are very busy. I'm very busy too. But we are very happy every day.

Module 8

Unit 1 Will you help me?

一、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. B
二、1. China 2. Chinese 3. helping 4. help 5. wind 6. windy
三、1. in 2. for 3. about 4. on 5. of
四、1. A 点拨：主语为第三人称单数，故选 has。 2. A 点拨：“Thank you for your help.”意为“谢谢你的帮助”。 3. B 点拨：此句中应用名词所有格形式 mother's。 4. C 5. B 6. C 点拨：主语为 his mother 和 grandma，故 be 动词用 are。 7. A 点拨：情态动词 can 后接动词原形。 8. C 点拨：dragon 前应该用形容词 Chinese 修饰。 9. B 10. B
五、1. C 2. D 3. E 4. B 5. A
六、1. fly a kite 2. a toy panda 3. be windy 4. present 5. Chinese words
七、1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A
八、1. Tomorrow is John's birthday.
2. What present can I take?
3. It will be a great present.
4. Will it be windy in Beijing?
5. My sister will love this toy plane.
九、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C
十、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

Unit 2 I made a kite.

一、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F
二、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A
三、1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A
四、1. B 点拨：在一般现在时中，主语是 you，动词用原形。 2. C 点拨：in the sky 意为“在空中”。 3. A 点拨：on a piece of paper 意为“在一张纸上”。 4. A 点拨：由 did 可知句子为一般过去时，故选 yesterday。 5. B 点拨：表示“为某人”用介词 for。 6. B 点拨：由问将要干什么用疑问词 what。 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. B 点拨：由 yesterday 可知句子为一般过去时，故动词用过去式。
五、1. E 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. F
方法点拨：本题用**关键词对应图片法**解答。先找出答句中的关键短语：rode a bike，went to the zoo，played table tennis，read a book，did his homework，played football，然后找到对应的图片即可。
六、1. make 点拨：由 It 是 I 的缩写，will 后面接动词原形。 2. paints 点拨：主语为第三人称单数，故动词用第三人称单数形式。 3. fly 点拨：let's 后面接动词原形。 4. Chinese 点拨：dragon 前加修饰词应该用形容词 Chinese，意为“中国的”。 5. How 点拨：此句意为“你怎么制作一张卡片？”。
七、1. What; do 点拨：根据画线部分可知，问题是“明天你要干什么？”。 2. I won't 点拨：Will you…？句型的否定回答是“No, I won't.”。 3. Will you 4. I will 5. I'm going to read this book.
八、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. C

Module 8 能力过关练

听说专练
听力材料：
一、1. What about a kite?
2. I'll make a paper ship for you.
3. My grandma is Chinese.
4. He can draw cars.
5. You can find this word in the dictionary.
二、1. Will you fly a kite tomorrow?
2. Draw a dragon on a piece of paper.
3. I went to the zoo with my parents yesterday.
4. It will be a great present.
5. Tom will play basketball tomorrow.
三、1. What did you do yesterday, Lingling?
2. Will it be windy in Yinchuan tomorrow?
3. What will you do tomorrow?
4. Will you help me?
5. What about a dragon kite?
四、 It will be a holiday next week. Sam will go to the park on Monday. He will play with his friends on Thursday. He will go swimming with his father on Friday. He will visit his grandma with his sister on Saturday. Sam's mother will do the housework on Saturday.
答案：
一、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C
二、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A
方法点拨：本题用**听关键词法**解答。听录音时要抓住关键词，然后看图片，找出与关键词相符的图片即可。
三、5 2 1 4 3
四、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
五、1. —Will you sing a song? —No, I won't.
2. —Will you fly a kite? —Yes, I will.
3. —Will you watch TV? —No, I won't.
六、1. Draw a dragon on a piece of yellow paper.
2. Paint it. 3. Cut the paper.
4. Put sticks on it. 5. Tie strings to it.
6. Fly the kite.

读写专练
七、1. make 2. was 3. made 4. drew 5. painted 6. wrote 7. gave
八、1. F 点拨：由 Sam 的第二句话可知 Sam 不喜欢足球，故此句错误。 2. T 点拨：由 Sam 的第三句话可知此句正确。 3. T 点拨：由 That's a good idea… Can you come with me? 及 Yes, of course. 可知他们将会野餐，故此句正确。 4. F 点拨：由倒数第四句可知时间为明天早上 7 点，故此句错误。 5. T 点拨：由倒数第二句可知此句正确。
九、1. A 点拨：由警察的话“The old man lost his way(迷路)in the park and called us for help”可知。 2. B 点拨：由第二句可知吃午饭的时间是 half past twelve。 3. C 点拨：由“Sally was very surprised(惊讶)”可知。 4. Because he was tired and didn't want to walk home.
十、范文： How do you make a kite?
Do you know how to make a kite? Well, now let me tell you. Draw a dragon on a piece of paper. You can paint it. Cut the paper. Then put sticks on it and tie strings to it. At last you can fly your kite in the sky.

Module 9

Unit 1 We laughed a lot.

一、1. laughed 2. letter 3. theatre 4. actor
5. restaurant 6. women
二、1. B **点拨**:由时间状语 yesterday 可知,谓语动词用过去式。
2. B **点拨**:由 three 可知,后面的名词应为复数形式。
3. A **点拨**:这是一个特殊疑问句,由 last night 可知,助动词应用过去式,实义动词用原形。
4. C **点拨**:lots of 意为"大量",a lot 意为"很;非常",在动词后相当于 much。
5. A
三、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B
四、1. wore 2. English 3. women 4. told 5. funny
五、1. My grandma told me lots of jokes.
2. After the show he went to the park.
3. Children here love the theatre.
4. What did they do last week?
5. Are you ready for your trip to Beijing?
六、1. watched TV 2. ate an apple and some sweets
3. drank milk 4. played with toy cars
5. read a book 6. played computer games
七、1. B **点拨**:由 We had no lessons on the weekend. 可知周末没有课,故选 B。
2. A **点拨**:由 There was a football match between China and the US last Saturday afternoon. 可知。
3. B **点拨**:由 I was going to watch it. 可知 Linda 想去看。
4. B **点拨**:由 I went to Hongxing Sports Hall by No. 8 bus. 可知她是乘公共汽车去的。

Unit 2 Mum bought new T-shirts for you.

一、1. quick question 2. she ship 3. with those
4. thank think
二、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. C
三、1. had a good time 2. borrow a book
3. listening to music 4. in my room
5. in three days 6. a book about Chinese history
四、1. A **点拨**:not…at all 意为"一点也不"
2. C **点拨**:由 yesterday 可知动词用过去式。
3. B **点拨**:ask 后接人称代词宾格。
4. C **点拨**:for 意为"给"。
5. B **点拨**:Don't forget to do sth. 意为"不要忘记做某事"。
6. A **点拨**:listen to 后接名词或人称代词宾格形式,in the evening 为固定短语。
7. B **点拨**:由 yesterday 可知此句为一般过去时,故用 didn't。
五、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F
六、5 3 2 4 1 6
方法点拨:本题用**分析推理法**解答。首先读句子,分析句子的含义,由问句找对应答句,然后找联系,推理出符合语言逻辑的顺序。根据题意可知,对话是由谈论书信到写信的人,由人到居住地,再由居住地到旅行这样的顺序展开的。
七、1. Yesterday he read a book.
Now he is reading a book.
Tomorrow he is going to read a book.
2. Yesterday they had a picnic.
Now they are having a picnic.
Tomorrow they are going to have a picnic.
3. Yesterday she sang a song.
Now she is singing a song.
Tomorrow she is going to sing a song.
八、1. C 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B

Module 9 能力过关练

听说专练
听力材料:
一、1. Yesterday she went to a children's hospital.
2. Mike ate a hamburger last night.
3. This letter is from China.
4. Mum bought a new T-shirt for you.
5. My grandpa read a book about Chinese history yesterday afternoon.
二、1. I bought some books.
2. The men wore women's clothes.
3. Dad is going to ask you some questions.
4. Don't forget to bring some cards.
5. Is there a letter for me?
三、1. I've got two emails in English.
2. Are you ready for your trip to China?
3. After the show we went to the park.
4. We're going to see you in two weeks.
5. I borrowed a bike for you.
四、Dear Kate,
I am in Hebei now. It is cold here. I wear my thick clothes.
I am going to go to Shanghai to see you next week. I bought a red coat for you. I hope you'll like it.
Love,
Lily
答案:
一、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
二、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B
三、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B
四、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F
方法点拨:本题用**三步两遍听音法**解答。第一步:阅读题干,预估题意。第二步:听录音,捕捉关键信息。第三步:第二遍听录音,检查核对答案。第一小题需听清收信人和写信人的名字;第二小题由 I am going to go to Shanghai to see you next week. 可知 Lily 还没去上海;第三小题由 I am in Hebei now. It is cold here. 可知此题正确;第四小题由 I am going to go to Shanghai to see you next week. 可知此题正确;第五小题由 I bought a red coat for you. 及写信人可知此题错误。
五、1. I saw a dog. It wore shoes.
2. I saw a man. He wore a dress.
3. I saw a baby. He ate an apple.
4. I saw a boy. He rode a horse.
六、1. I went to a theatre yesterday.
2. Bob is reading a letter now.
3. I am going to a library tomorrow.

读写专练
七、1. real books. 2. Yes, there is. 3. Yes, I did.
八、1. D 2. E 3. C 4. A 5. B
九、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. A
十、**范文:**
Dear Donald,
I was in Beijing last week. It was cold. It snowed a lot. I wore my thick clothes. But I like snow very much. I made a snowman with my little brother.
I'm going to Shanghai next week. I bought a red coat for you.
See you soon!
Yours,
Golf

Module 10

Unit 1 Where are you going?

一、1. airport 2. ticket 3. party 4. get up
5. present
二、1. C **点拨**:be ready for…意为"为……做准备"。
2. A **点拨**:will 后跟动词原形。
3. C **点拨**:a list of things to do 意为"做事的一张清单"。
4. B **点拨**:由 this weekend 可知,此句为一般将来时,故用 be going (to)结构表示"将要"。
5. A **点拨**:由疑问词 who 可知答案应回答人。
6. A **点拨**:be going to do sth.,表示"将要做某事"。
7. A 8. C
三、1. Where 2. What 3. Who 4. What 5. When
6. How
方法点拨:本题用**问答结合法**解答。首先要知道特殊疑问词的含义:who 谁;when 什么时候;how 怎样;what 什么;what…like 什么。然后阅读并理解答句,最后根据答句思考提问内容,并选出对应的疑问词。如第一小题,答句是我要去公园,故问题是你要去哪里,选 where。
四、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A
五、1. Will it be all right?
2. You can make a list of things to buy.
3. When are you going to the airport?
4. I'm going to meet you in Beijing.
5. Where are you going this Sunday?
六、1. He's going to England. 2. In July.
3. He is going to visit the London Eye.
4. By plane. 5. His friends.
七、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B

Unit 2 I'm in New York now.

一、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. C
二、1. speak English 2. took a taxi 3. have a party
4. take photos 5. made Chinese food
三、1. meet 2. taxi 3. try 4. more 5. passport
四、1. C **点拨**:American 是以元音音素开头的单词,前面不定冠词用 an。
2. A **点拨**:everyone 为不定代词,后面的谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。
3. B 4. B 5. C
6. B **点拨**:lots of 后可接可数名词复数,people 是集合名词,表示复数概念。
7. B **点拨**:want to do sth. 意为"想做某事"。
8. A **点拨**:机场为小地点,在机场用介词 at。
9. C **点拨**:城市为大地点,前面用介词 in。
10. B **点拨**:funny 可以用在动物前面作修饰词。
五、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F
六、1. write 2. arrived
3. meet **点拨**:此句为一般将来时,be going to 后接动词原形。
4. speaks **点拨**:由 every day 可知此句为一般现在时,主语 my cousin 为第三人称单数,动词用第三人称单数形式。
5. buildings **点拨**:build 为动词,形容词 tall 后接名词,由 there are 可知后面名词用复数形式。
七、1. When did Daming arrive there?
2. Where is Tom now?
3. How did you get to London?
4. Who met John at the airport?
八、1. B 2. E 3. D 4. A 5. C
九、1. C 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. A

Module 10 能力过关练

听说专练
听力材料:
一、1. I want to try Chinese food. 2. I feel nervous.
3. It will be all right.
4. We took a bus to the theatre.
5. I'm going to play a game.
二、1. Meimei is going to the zoo this Saturday.
2. Xiaoyong wants to take some photos.
3. Taotao met me at the airport.
4. —Is Tingting singing a song?
—Yes, she is.
5. —When did Dongdong arrive in Beijing?
—Last week.
三、1. She is at the airport now.
2. He arrived yesterday.
3. I'm going to take my ball.
4. She's flying a kite.
5. Mum is going to the airport with Daming.
四、M: Hello, I'm Tom. I did many things last weekend. I did my homework on Saturday morning. Then I played football with my friends. In the afternoon, I went to the library to read books. On Sunday morning, I went to a cinema. On Sunday afternoon, I rode a horse.
答案:
一、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A
二、1—B 2—A 3—D 4—E 5—C
三、1. A **点拨**:根据答句中的主语 she 可知选 A。
2. A **点拨**:根据答句中 yesterday 可知句为一般过去时。
3. B **点拨**:根据答句中的 they may ball 可知问句询问的是你要带什么。
4. A **点拨**:答句为现在进行时,故选 A。
5. B **点拨**:根据答句可知问句询问的是谁要跟大明去机场。
四、4 3 1 5 2
五、1. —Where are you going, Amy?
—I am going to Guilin.
—When are you going there?
—At seven o'clock tomorrow morning.
—What are you going to do?
—I am going to row a boat.
—What are you going to take?
—My umbrella and my ticket.
—Who's going with you?
—My family.
2. —Where are you going, Lingling?
—I am going to Hong Kong.
—When are you going there?
—At half past three tomorrow afternoon.
—What are you going to do?
—I am going to visit Aunt and go shopping.
—What are you going to take?
—My passport and presents.
—Who's going with you?
—Mum.
3. —Where are you going, Daming?
—I am going to Mount Huang.
—When are you going there?
—At ten o'clock tomorrow morning.
—What are you going to do?
—I am going to climb the mountain.
—What are you going to take?
—My shoes and clothes.
—Who's going with you?
—Dad.

读写专练
六、1. Hainan 2. When 3. seven
4. my shoes, my cap and my clothes
5. my father
七、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
八、1. In Shanghai. **点拨**:由"I'm very well in Shanghai."可知,关键词是地点 Shanghai。
2. Huanhuan. **点拨**:由"And I made a new friend. Her name is Huanhuan."可知,新朋友叫 Huanhuan。

huan。
3. English。 点拨：由“She likes English best”可知，她最喜欢英语。
4. Next month。 点拨：由“I will be back next month”可知，Belinda 下个月回家。

九、范文：

Daming will arrive in Beijing at eleven tomorrow morning. His cousin is going to meet him at the airport. Daming is going to visit Tian'anmen Square. And then he is going to the Summer Palace. He is also going to visit the Great Wall. He will have a good time there.

Module 1 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. cooked 2. telephone 3. miss 4. night
5. woman 6. strong 方法点拨：本题用比较记忆法解答。第 1 小题，worked 为动词过去式，通过比较 cooked 也是动词过去式。第 2 小题，radio 为物品，句中 telephone 也是物品。第 3 小题，hope 为动词，句中 miss 也是动词。第 4 小题，year 是时间，句中 night 也是时间。第 5 小题，lady 为人物，句中表示人物的是 woman。第 6 小题，enough 为形容词，句中的形容词是 strong。
二、1. Life；ago 2. weren't 3. field(s) 4. hope 5. are
6. enough 7. lady 8. work 9. write

句型语法过关

三、1. B 点拨：动词 come 的现在进行时结构可表示即将进行的动作。
2. C 点拨：any 用于否定句中。
3. B 点拨：短语 be different from… 表示“和……不同”。
4. A
5. A 点拨：由时间状语可知，问句中助动词和答句中宝义动词都要用过去式。
6. A 点拨：didn't 后用动词原形。
7. B
8. C 点拨：or 用于否定句中连接两个并列的成分。

四、1. of 2. in 3. for 4. on 5. about

五、1. We lived in a small house.
2. She didn't have a computer.
3. An old lady talked about her life.
4. There weren't any telephones.
5. My grandpa worked in the fields.

综合运用过关

六、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T

Module 2 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. A；Art 2. A；teacher 3. B；went
4. B；cooking 5. B；learnt （答案不唯一）
方法点拨：本题用归类记忆法解答。根据所给单词的类别和词性，找出不同类的单词，再补充一个同类词。写同类词时，要结合词义和词形。题 1 是科目类，题 2 是职业类，题 3 是动词过去式，题 4 是动名词，题 5 是动词过去式。
二、1. dancer；driver 2. walked；by bus
3. watched TV；studying

句型语法过关

三、1. was 2. walking 3. taught 4. studied 5. work
6. learning 7. dancer
方法点拨：本题用时态判断法解答。即先判断句子时态，再根据主语的人称和数的不同，选择正确的形式填空。如 1、3、4 小题为一般过去时，动词也应用过去式；5 小题为一般现在时，doesn't 后面用动词原形；6 小题为现在进行时，动词应加-ing。

四、1. C 2. E 3. A 4. D 5. B

五、1. Did your grandma learn English?
2. Ms Smart is learning Chinese now.
3. She danced in lots of Chinese cities.
4. He was an English teacher.
5. Li Wei studied very hard.
方法点拨：本题用穿针引线法解答。连词成句题先看标点，如果是问号，先找针尖（疑问词），再找针体（助动词/be 动词/情态动词），然后是针鼻子（人称代词或人名），针尾（动词），最后是线（余下部分）。如果是句号，那就是针鼻子（主语）后面带着一根线（动词＋宾语＋介词短语/状语）。如第 1 小题，由？可知是问句，没有特殊疑问词，可知是一般疑问句，先找助动词 did，再找主语 your grandma，最后找谓语和宾语 learn English，连起来加问号即可成句子。

综合运用过关

六、1. C 点拨：由 There are five people in my family. 可知。
2. A 点拨：由 This is my grandma. She was a farmer before. 可知。
3. B 点拨：由 My grandpa was a worker. He worked in a factory(工厂)。可知。
4. A 点拨：由 My father is a taxi driver. 可知。
5. C 点拨：由 And she learnt a lot. She can cook，sing and dance. 可知。

Module 3 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. B

句型语法过关

二、1. A 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. A
三、1. got 2. did 3. gave 4. says 5. ate 6. cook
四、1. E 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. B
五、1. E 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D
六、1. What did；have 2. Does；like
3. had a hamburger 4. am going to drink
5. What do；like

综合运用过关

七、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
八、1. six 2. tea and bread 3. bread and milk
4. hamburgers and tea 5. milk

Module 4 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. C
二、1. I 2. E 3. C 4. A 5. H
6. B 7. G 8. D 9. F

句型语法过关

三、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. B
四、1. B；these 2. B；to 3. B；books 4. C；them
5. B；ask 6. B；from
五、1. I can't find them on Shelf D.
2. Where can I find information?
3. Those books are about animals.
4. Mike sent a book to me.
5. Can you make a home library?

综合运用过关

六、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. C

Module 5 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A
方法点拨：本题用分类记忆法解答。根据单词的不同类别或词性进行分类。例如：1 小题中 A、B 选项都是形容词，C 选项是名词；2 小题中 A、B 选项都是名词，C 选项是形容词；3、4 小题中 A、C 选项是动词，B 选项是形容词；5 小题中 B、C 选项是名词，A 选项是形容词。
二、1. small；big 2. light；heavy 3. easy；hard
方法点拨：本题用反义词记忆法解答。此题考查反义词的掌握情况，可用反义词记忆法归纳意义相反的单词，结合图片对比记忆。

句型语法过关

三、1. A 点拨：由第一句话中的“can't carry”可知，箱子应该很重。
2. B 点拨：will 后要跟动词原形。
3. A 点拨：在衣服上面用介词 on。
4. C
5. B 点拨：“too＋形容词＋for＋某人”表示“对某人来说太……”。
6. A 点拨：I'll take it. 意为“我要买下它”。

四、1. D 2. E 3. B 4. A 5. C
方法点拨：本题用分析理解法解答。即先阅读题干，充分理解题意，再根据题干描述，结合生活常识，推理筛测出答案。如第 1 小题，由 climbing 可推测出会爬的动物是 monkey。

综合运用过关

五、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C

Module 6 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、

p	j	r	e	s	t	
n	a	i	m	b	a	
o	o	d	p	e	z	
r	u	c	a	s	l	
t	t	q	e	t	d	
h	h	w	e	s	l	

二、1. parents 2. rode 3. moon 4. east 5. visited

句型语法过关

三、1. C 点拨：由 last week 可知句子为一般过去时，故动词用过去式。
2. C 点拨：in the south of China 意为“在中国的南方”。
3. C 点拨：由答句可知问句为一般过去时的一般疑问句，故选 C。
4. A 点拨：月份前用介词 in。
5. A 点拨：由 Dalian 可知询问地点，故用特殊疑问词 where。

四、1. in 2. of 3. for 4. with 5. to

五、1. I went to Chengdu. 2. It's in the west of China.
3. I went there in July.
4. I went there with my father.
5. I got there by train. 6. I ate delicious food.

综合运用过关

六、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A

Module 7 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. early late 2. evening morning
3. plane taxi 4. worker policeman
5. twelve three

二、1. a quarter past seven 2. a quarter to five
3. two o'clock 4. half past nine

三、1. worker；factory 2. does；teacher
3. starts；gets；late 4. work；home

句型语法过关

四、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. C

五、1. Will you be late? 2. What time is it?
3. I am going to be home at seven o'clock.
4. Who will be home at 8 o'clock?
5. My father doesn't go to work at seven o'clock every morning.

综合运用过关

六、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F

七、1. birthday 2. make 3. work 4. home
5. dinner 6. evening

Module 8 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. Chinese 2. so 3. word 4. piece 5. sticks

句型语法过关

二、1. C 点拨：be going to 后接动词原形，在某个城市用介词 in。
2. A 点拨：I'll 是 I will 的缩写，意为“我将要”，will 后接动词原形。
3. C 4. C
5. C 点拨：由 yesterday 可知句子为一般过去时，动词用过去式，a piece of 意为“一张”。
6. C 点拨：tie…to…意为“把……系在……上”。
7. B 点拨：由第二句中 was 可知前句为一般过去时，故选 B。
8. A 点拨：情态动词 could 后面接动词原形。
9. C 点拨：windy 意为“多风的”，是形容词。由 next Monday 可知用一般将来时。will be 后接形容词。

三、1. fly a kite；I will 2. play basketball；I won't
3. read a book 4. play computer games
5. painted the dragon

四、1. My brother drew a picture
2. She put sticks on the desk
3. I cut the birthday cake for my mother

综合运用过关

五、1. D 2. A 3. C 4. E 5. B

六、1. He played football with his friends.
2. He listened to music. 3. No, he didn't.
4. Yes, he did. 5. He played the guitar.

Module 9 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. restaurant 2. woman 3. theatre 4. wore
5. told

句型语法过关

二、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. C

三、1. ate a pear 2. is eating a banana
3. is going to/will eat an apple
4. played computer games 5. is playing basketball
6. is going to/will play football

综合运用过关

四、1. D 2. A 3. E 4. C 5. B

五、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

Module 10 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. nervous 2. building 3. speak 4. When
5. passport

句型语法过关

二、1. B　**点拨**：由答句可知询问你将要带什么，故选 B。
2. A　**点拨**：对地点提问用 where。
3. C　**点拨**：of 意为“的”，a picture of my school 意为“一张我学校的画”。
4. B　**点拨**：in America 意为“在美国”，an American girl 意为“一位美国的女孩”。
5. B　**点拨**：I think so 意为“我认为是这样”。

三、1. met　2. arrived　3. will make　4. took
5. to find　6. write

四、1. When did Daming go to Xi'an?
2. Who is going to school with Amy?
3. Where are you going this afternoon?
4. What is Sam going to take to the park?

综合运用过关

五、1. D　2. F　3. A　4. B　5. C

六、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. C

全书听力专练

听力(一)

听力材料：

一、1. I can write English words.
2. Do you like to watch TV?
3. How did you go to the moon?
4. Please put the books on the shelf.
5. I gave a present to my sister.

二、1. What did she have for breakfast?
2. Where are the books about animals?
3. There weren't any buses before.
4. There was a small house two years ago.
5. This black bag is nice.

三、1. What did he have for breakfast?
2. Does she have bread for lunch?
3. Did he go to school yesterday?
4. Do you like English food?
5. Were there any cars in your city?

四、Lingling has got an old basketball. She likes it very much. It's easy for her to play it. Sam has got a bag. He can carry it. It's light. Amy has got a new bike. She wants to ride it. But it's hard for her.

答案：

一、1. C　2. A　3. B　4. B　5. C

二、1. A　2. A　3. B　4. A　5. A

方法点拨：本题用**对比话**解答。听题时，需仔细对比两个句子中不同的地方，然后快速找出和录音内容相同的句子。

三、1. A　2. A　3. A　4. A　5. B

四、

	Lingling has got a basketball.	Sam has got a bag.	Amy has got a bike.
light		√	
heavy			
easy	√		
hard			√
new			√
old	√		

听力(二)

听力材料：

一、1. M: Mr White and Mr Brown got up at six o'clock last Saturday morning.
2. W: My grandpa worked in the fields.
3. M: The driver is Chinese.
4. W: They took a taxi to Dalian.
5. M: Hainan is in the south of China.

二、1. M: She laughed a lot yesterday.
2. W: His father works in a big factory.
3. M: They'll visit Changchun by train.
4. W: I had fish and chips yesterday afternoon.
5. M: My mum goes to work at 7 o'clock in the morning.

三、1. M: What did you eat for breakfast?
2. W: Did your uncle work on a farm?
3. M: Where can I find a book about art?
4. W: What does Mr Smith do?
5. M: What did they do with Mr Black?

四、1. Sarah read a book about Chinese history yesterday. She wants to know more about China.
2. Bob has got a letter from his cousin Xiaogang. He is happy.
3. Mark likes listening to music in the evening. Lingling gives some CDs to him.
4. Fangfang has many questions. She wants to ask her teachers.

答案：

一、1. six o'clock　2. worked　3. Chinese　4. taxi
5. south

二、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. F

方法点拨：本题用**听关键词话**解答。首先要理解图，然后看图片内容与录音内容中关键词是否相符。题 1 关键词是 laughed a lot，题 2 关键词是 factory，题 3 关键词是 by train，题 4 关键词是 fish and chips，题 5 关键词是 seven o'clock。从图片内容看，题 1 和题 4 与图片相符，其他不相符。

三、3　2　5　4　1

四、1—D　2—B　3—C　4—A

听力(三)

听力材料：

一、1. It's easy for you to carry.
2. Can you write the Chinese word?
3. I went to the theatre last night.
4. The women wore men's clothes.
5. I'd like another apple, please.

二、1. My aunt is an English teacher.
2. Yesterday she took a taxi to school.
3. I want a dictionary.
4. Mum bought a new computer for me.
5. Amy has got a beautiful umbrella.

三、1. Where are you going tomorrow?
2. When will your father be home?
3. Tomorrow I will visit my cousin. What present can I take?
4. Where is Xinjiang?
5. Did your mother speak English?

四、Daming is in America now. He's visiting America with his cousin, Simon. America is a very big country. It is also called the US. New York is the biggest city in the US. It's in the east of America. It's also called "the Big Apple". There are lots of tall buildings and cars in New York. Grandma makes Chinese food and American food for Daming. Daming likes American food very much.

答案：

一、1. C　2. B　3. C　4. A　5. B

二、1. B　2. C　3. A　4. B　5. C

三、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. B　5. B

四、1. T　2. F　3. T　4. T　5. F

方法点拨：本题用**推理话**解答。听录音时，应先读题，如果录音内容与所给句子一致，可判断句子正确。如果录音内容与所给句子不一致，要分析句意，根据意思判断是否一致。题 1 和题 3 与录音内容完全一致，故相符。题 4 根据短文意思可知纽约也叫“the Big Apple”，故相符。题 2 和题 5 与录音内容不一致，可推断不相符。

典点
活页检测卷
后附全书参考答案及点拨
五年级
英语 下
WY版

Module 1

Unit 1 We lived in a small house.

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. still 还,仍然　2. programme (电视或广播)节目　3. lady 女士,夫人　4. life 生活
5. different 不同的　6. ago 以前　7. interviewer 采访者　8. enough 足够的
9. television 电视机　10. change 改变,变化　11. grandchildren (外)孙子;(外)孙女
12. in the UK 在英国　13. in China 在中国　14. many years ago 许多年前　15. live in 居住在
16. lots of food 很多食物　17. enough food 足够的食物　18. watch TV 看电视
19. every day 每天

二、我要掌握的句型

1. We lived in a small house. 我们住在一个小房子里。
2. There weren't any televisions. 没有电视机。
3. Thank you for talking to us. 谢谢你对我们说(这些)。
4. Life was very different in China many years ago. 许多年前中国的生活非常不同。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen, read and act out.

原文	译文
Lingling is still in the UK with Sam and Amy.	*玲玲仍然和萨姆、埃米在英国。*
Amy: Look, Lingling! It's a programme about China. Come and watch!	埃米:看,玲玲!它是一个关于中国的节目。过来看!
Lingling: I'm coming!	玲玲:我来了!
Old lady: Life was very different in China many years ago.	老太太:许多年以前中国的生活很是不同。
Interviewer: How was it different?	采访者:它有怎样的不同?
Old lady: We lived in a small house. We didn't have enough food. There weren't many buses. There weren't any televisions.	老太太:我们住在一个小房子里。我们没有足够的食物。没有很多公共汽车。没有电视机。

Interviewer: How about now?	采访者:现在呢?
Old lady: We live in a big house. We've got lots of food. There are lots of buses and cars. I watch TV every day. Yesterday I watched TV with my grandchildren.	老太太:我们(现在)住在一个大房子里。我们有很多食物。有很多公共汽车和小汽车。我每天看电视。昨天我和我的孙子(女)一起看电视了。
Interviewer: Thank you for talking to us.	采访者:谢谢你对我们说(这些)。
Amy: China is changing.	埃米:中国正在变化。
Lingling: I miss China! I miss my grandma!	玲玲:我想念中国!我想念我的祖母!

考点突破营

1. We lived in a small house. 我们住在一个小房子里。

解析:live in 意为"居住在",live 的过去式是 lived。本句用来表达某人过去住在某地。

句型结构:主语 + lived in + 某地 + 过去的时间.

例句:We lived in a small house many years ago. 许多年前我们住在一个小房子里。

易错点提示 表达某人现在住在某地的句型结构:主语 + live(s) in + 某地.

例句:We live in a big house now. 我们现在住在一个大房子里。

2. There weren't any televisions. 没有电视机。

解析:此句为 there be 句型一般过去时的否定句。用 there be 句型描述以前没有某物时,be 动词要用过去式:wasn't/weren't。any 表示"任何,一些",常用于疑问句和否定句中;some 表示"一些",常用于肯定句中。句型结构:There was/wasn't + (a/an +) 可数名词单数或不可数名词. 或 There were/weren't + 可数名词复数.

3. Thank you for talking to us. 谢谢你对我们说(这些)。

解析:表示因某事感谢某人可以用句型:Thank you for + 动词-ing 形式. 也可以用句型:Thank you for + 名词.

例句:Thank you for your help. 谢谢你的帮助。

4. Life was very different in China many years ago. 许多年前中国的生活很是不同。

解析:此句为一般过去时。一般过去时常与表示过去的时间状语连用。如 last year(去年),yesterday(昨天),one month ago(一个月前)等。

肯定句的句型结构:主语 + was/were + 其他. 或主语 + 动词的过去式 + 其他.

例句:I was short two years ago. 两年前我很矮。

I watched TV yesterday. 我昨天看电视了。

否定句的句型结构：主语 + was/were not + 其他. 或主语 + did not/didn't + 动词原形 + 其他.

例句：I wasn't tall two years ago. 两年前我不高。

I didn't watch TV yesterday. 昨天我没有看电视。

Unit 2 She didn't have a television.

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. night 夜晚，夜间　2. work 工作；劳动；干活儿　3. field 田地　4. fire 火，炉火
5. or（用于否定句中）也不，也没　6. radio 收音机　7. telephone 电话
8. couldn't = could not 不能　9. write 写　10. hope 希望　11. last night 昨天晚上
12. talk about her life 谈论她的生活　13. in the fields 在田地里　14. on a fire 在炉火上

二、我要掌握的句型

1. She worked in the fields. 她在田地里工作。
2. She didn't have a television or a radio. 她没有电视机，也没有收音机。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen and read.

原文	译文
Dear Daming, I watched a television programme about China last night. An old lady talked about her life many years ago. She worked in the fields. She cooked on a fire. She didn't have a television or a radio. She didn't have a telephone. She couldn't read or write. I miss my grandma. I miss you too! I hope you are well. Love, Lingling	亲爱的大明： 昨晚我看了一个关于中国的电视节目。一位老太太谈论了她很多年前的生活。她在田地里工作。她在炉火上做饭。她没有电视机，也没有收音机。她没有电话。她不会读，也不会写。 我想念我的祖母。我也想念你！ 我希望你们一切都好。 爱你的， 玲玲

考点突破营

1. She worked in the fields. 她在田地里工作。

解析:此句用来描述某人以前在某处工作。句型结构:主语 + worked + 地点状语.

例句:My father worked in a hospital two years ago. 我父亲两年前在一家医院工作。

2. She didn't have a television or a radio. 她没有电视机,也没有收音机。

解析:这是一个谓语为实义动词的一般过去时的否定句。用来描述某人以前没有某物。have 意为"有",didn't have 意为"没有"。or 在否定句中代替 and,意为"也不"。or 常用于疑问句或否定句中,and 用于肯定句中。句型结构:主语 + didn't have + 某物.

我是小作家

如何描写生活变化的作文

一、思维步骤:

1. 生活变化要围绕过去的生活和现在的生活来写,因此时态要用一般过去时和一般现在时。
2. 描写时可从居住环境和生活细节的变化着手,将过去与现在进行对比。首先简单介绍自己将要谈论的话题,然后分别描写十年前与现在的居住环境与生活细节,最后用一两句话进行总结。
3. 通读检查,注意一般过去时和一般现在时句子中动词的变化。

二、精彩词句:

1. 开头:Today I'll tell you something about my life.
2. 主体内容:Ten years ago, I lived in... There was a... There weren't any... We didn't have... Now we live in... There is a... There are many... We have lots of...
3. 总结:China is changing. We live a happy life.

三、经典范文:

My name is Huang Rui. I live in Macheng. It's a small city. Today I'll tell you something about my life. Ten years ago, I lived in a small house. There was only a small television and a radio. There wasn't a car . There weren't many buses. We didn't have enough food. Now I live in a big house. There is a big television. There are many buses and cars. We have lots of food. Everybody has a cell phone. China is changing. We live a happy life.

Module 2

Unit 1 She learnt English.

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. learnt (learn 的过去式)学习　2. taught(teach 的过去式)教,讲授　3. language 语言
4. wrote(write 的过去式)写　5. dancer 舞蹈演员　6. foreign 外国的
7. learnt to dance 学过跳舞　8. learnt to cook 学过烹饪　9. taught languages 教过语言
10. wrote a book 写过一本书　11. foreign languages 外语　12. learnt English 学过英语

二、我要掌握的句型

1. She danced in lots of Chinese cities. 她在中国的许多城市都演出过。
2. Did she learn any foreign languages? 她学过外语吗?
3. She learnt English. 她学过英语。
4. But he's learning English now! 但是他现在正在学英语!

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen, read and act out.

原文	译文
Sam: Who are they, Lingling?	萨姆:他们是谁,玲玲?
Lingling: They're my grandparents.	玲玲:他们是我的祖父母。
Sam: Who's this?	萨姆:这是谁?
Lingling: It's my grandma. She was a dancer. She danced in lots of Chinese cities.	玲玲:这是我祖母。她曾经是个舞蹈演员。她在中国的许多城市都演出过。
Amy: Did she learn any foreign languages?	埃米:她学过外语吗?
Lingling: Yes, she learnt English.	玲玲:是的,她学过英语。
Amy: Is this your grandpa?	埃米:这是你祖父吗?
Lingling: Yes, it is. He was a driver.	玲玲:是的,这是(我祖父)。他曾是一位司机。
Amy: Did he learn English too?	埃米:他也学过英语吗?
Lingling: No, he didn't. But he's learning English now!	玲玲:不,他没学过。但是他现在正在学英语!

考点突破营

1. She danced in lots of Chinese cities. 她在中国的许多城市都演出过。

解析:此句为一般过去时的肯定句,描述某人做过某事。danced 为 dance 的过去式。lots of = a lot of,表示"很多的",可以修饰可数名词复数和不可数名词,口语中多用 lots of。cities 是 city 的复数形式。

2. Did she learn any foreign languages? 她学过外语吗?

解析:此句是由助动词 did 开头的一般过去时的一般疑问句,用来询问某人是否做过某事。句型结构:Did + 主语 + 动词原形(+ 其他)? 肯定回答:Yes,主语 + did.　否定回答:No,主语 + didn't.

例句:—Did you watch TV yesterday? 你昨天看电视了吗? —Yes,I did. 是的,我看了。

3. She learnt English. 她学过英语。

解析:这是一个谓语为实义动词的一般过去时的肯定句,用来描述某人做过某事。无论主语是第几人称,是单数还是复数,谓语动词都用过去式,且没有人称和数的变化。learnt 是 learn 的过去式。句型结构:主语 + 动词过去式 + (其他).

4. But he's learning English now! 但是现在他正在学英语!

解析:此句为现在进行时的肯定句,表示某人此时或现阶段正在做某事。句型结构:主语 + be 动词 + 动词-ing 形式(+ 其他).

Unit 2 Mr Li was a teacher.

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. studied (study 的过去式)学习　2. hard 努力地　3. wind 风　4. leaves 叶子,树叶
5. move 移动　6. shake 摇动,抖动　7. go to school 上学　8. learnt Maths 学习数学
9. taught Chinese 教语文　10. twenty years ago 二十年前　11. a good pupil 一名好学生
12. studied very hard 学习非常刻苦　13. pass through 经过,路过　14. pass by 经过

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Twenty years ago, Mr Li was a teacher. 二十年前,李先生是一名教师。
2. He studied very hard. 他学习非常刻苦。
3. Now Mr Li doesn't work. 现在李先生不工作了。

翻译达人秀


课文朗读

② Listen and read.

原 文	译 文
Twenty years ago, Mr Li was a teacher. He taught Chinese. Chen Hai was in his class. He was a good pupil. He studied very hard. Now Mr Li doesn't work. He's learning English. Chen Hai is an English teacher. He's teaching Mr Li.	二十年前,李先生是一位教师。他教语文。陈海曾在他的班里。他是一名好学生。他学习非常刻苦。 现在李先生不工作了。他正在学习英语。陈海是一位英语老师。他正在教李先生。

考点突破营

1. Twenty years ago, Mr Li was a teacher. 二十年前,李先生是一位教师。
   解析:这是一个含有 be 动词的一般过去时的肯定句,用于描述某人以前的职业。ago 表示"以前",常和一段时间连用,用于一般过去时。句型结构:主语(单数) + was + a/an + 职业名称.
2. He studied very hard. 他学习非常刻苦。
   解析:此句型用来描述某人干某事怎么样。句型结构:主语 + 动词(+ 宾语) + 副词.
   例句:My mother cooks fish well. 我妈妈做鱼做得好。
3. Now Mr Li doesn't work. 现在李先生不工作了。
   解析:这是一个谓语动词为实义动词的一般现在时的否定句,用来描述某人现阶段不做某事。句型结构:主语 + don't/doesn't + 动词原形(+ 其他).

我是小作家

介绍某人过去到现在的变化的作文

一、思维步骤:

1. 介绍某人过去和现在的变化,时态要用一般过去时和一般现在时。
2. 描写时可以先简单介绍人物,然后分别介绍人物的职业以及过去和现在的学习工作情况。
3. 通读检查,注意一般过去时和一般现在时的句子中动词的变化。

二、精彩词句:

1. Look at this photo. This is my father.
2. Twenty years ago, he was a ...
3. Now he teaches ...

三、经典范文:

My father

Look at this photo. This is my father. Twenty years ago, he was a teacher. He taught Chinese. He liked playing basketball. But he couldn't speak English or drive a car. Now he teaches Science. He has a new car and he can drive the car. He is learning English now. He wants to travel all over the world in five years.

Module 3

Unit 1 She had eggs and sausages.

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. hamburger 汉堡包　2. English 英国(式)的　3. breakfast 早餐,早饭　4. lunch 午餐,午饭
5. sandwich 三明治　6. traditional 传统的　7. dish 食品;菜肴
8. fish and chips 炸鱼加炸薯条　9. got an email 收到了一封电子邮件
10. English food 英式食物　11. a traditional English dish 一道传统的英国菜

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Yesterday she had an English breakfast. 昨天她吃了一顿英式早餐。
2. What did she have for lunch? 她午饭吃了什么?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen, read and act out.

原文	译文
Daming: Look! I've got an email from Lingling. It's about English food.	大明:看!我收到了一封来自玲玲的电子邮件。它是关于英式食物的。
Fanfan: What does it say?	凡凡:上面说什么了?
Daming: Yesterday she had an English breakfast.	大明:昨天她吃了一顿英式早餐。
Fanfan: What did she have?	凡凡:她吃了什么?
Daming: She had eggs and sausages.	大明:她吃了鸡蛋和香肠。
Fanfan: And what did she have for lunch?	凡凡:那她午饭吃了什么?
Daming: She had sandwiches.	大明:她吃了三明治。
Fanfan: What did she have for dinner?	凡凡:她晚饭吃了什么?
Daming: She had fish and chips.	大明:她吃了炸鱼加炸薯条。
Fanfan: Fish and chips?	凡凡:炸鱼加炸薯条?
Daming: Yes. It's a traditional English dish.	大明:是的。它是一道传统的英国菜。
Fanfan: Does Lingling like English food?	凡凡:玲玲喜欢英式食物吗?
Daming: Yes, she does. She says it's delicious!	大明:是的,她喜欢。她说它非常可口!

考点突破营

1. Yesterday she had an English breakfast. 昨天她吃了一顿英式早餐。

解析:此句为一般过去时,had 是 have 的过去式,表示“吃”。

易错点提示 have 和 eat 都可以表示“吃”。eat 一般指吃固体食物;have 既可以表示吃,还可以表示喝。

2. What did she have for lunch? 她午饭吃了什么?

解析:此句是由 what 引导的一般过去时的特殊疑问句,用来询问某人三餐吃了什么。助动词用 did。what 意为“什么”,for 后面可以接三餐的名称。句型结构:What did + 主语 + have for + 三餐名称? 答句:主语 + had + 食品名称.

易错点提示 答句中要用 have/has 的过去式 had。

例句:—What did you have for breakfast? 你早餐吃了什么?

—I had eggs and milk. 我吃了鸡蛋,喝了牛奶。

Unit 2 Sam ate four hamburgers.

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. gave(give 的过去式)给　2. tonight 今夜,今晚　3. ate(eat 的过去式)吃
4. toast 烤面包,吐司　5. jam 果酱　6. at school 在学校　7. very much 很,非常
8. cook Chinese food 做中国菜

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Today Sam ate four hamburgers at school! 今天萨姆在学校里吃了四个汉堡包!
2. He likes hamburgers very much. 他非常喜欢汉堡包。
3. She gave her hamburgers to Sam. 她把她的汉堡包给了萨姆。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen and read.

原文	译文
Dear Daming, Today Sam ate four hamburgers at school! He likes hamburgers very much. Lingling had a sandwich because she doesn't like hamburgers. She gave her hamburgers to Sam.	亲爱的大明: 今天萨姆在学校里吃了四个汉堡包!他非常喜欢汉堡包。玲玲吃了一个三明治因为她不喜欢汉堡包。她把她的汉堡包给了萨姆。

I miss Chinese food. Tonight Mum is going to cook Chinese food for us. Love, Amy	我想念中国菜。今晚妈妈要给我们做中国菜。 爱你的, 埃米

考点突破营

1. Today Sam ate four hamburgers at school! 今天萨姆在学校吃了四个汉堡包!

解析:此句是一般过去时,用来描述某人吃了什么食物。ate 是 eat 的过去式,意为"吃"。句型结构:主语 + ate(+ 数量) + 食物名称(+ 其他).

2. He likes hamburgers very much. 他非常喜欢汉堡包。

解析:此句描述某人非常喜欢某物。句型结构:主语 + like/likes + 某物 + very much.

易错点提示 此句为一般现在时。主语为第三人称单数时,like 要用第三人称单数形式 likes。描述某人不喜欢某物,用否定形式,在主语后加 don't 或 doesn't。

3. She gave her hamburgers to Sam. 她把她的汉堡包给了萨姆。

解析:gave 是 give 的过去式,意为"给"。give 后面可接双宾语,"物"是直接宾语,"人"是间接宾语。表示"给某人某物"可以用 give sth. to sb. 或 give sb. sth.,这两种表达方式一般可互换。若 give 的直接宾语是代词,必须用 give sth. to sb.。

我是小作家

写某天一日三餐和活动的作文

一、思维步骤:

1. 抓关键词,确定时态。已经发生的事情要用一般过去时,将要发生的事情要用一般将来时,正在做的事情要用现在进行时。
2. 整理思路,按时间顺序写。描写时先介绍时间,然后按照时间顺序介绍这一天吃的食物和做的事情,最后写自己的感受。
3. 通读检查,注意动词的变化。

二、精彩词句:

1. Last Sunday,...
2. I had... for breakfast/lunch/dinner.
3. I had a good day.

三、经典范文:

Last Sunday

Last Sunday, I got up at seven o'clock. I ate two eggs and some noodles for breakfast. Then I went to the park with my friends. We played football and flew kites in the park. At twelve o'clock, we were hungry. We had a picnic there. I ate some sausages and some bread. We came back home very late. In the evening, Mum cooked fish for me. I ate a lot. I had a good day.

Module 4

Unit 1 Let's make a home library.

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. library 图书馆　2. student 学生　3. sent(send 的过去式)发送,寄　4. CD 激光唱片,光盘
5. idea 主意,想法　6. put 放,安放　7. shelf 架子　8. heavy 重的,沉的
9. dictionary 词典,字典　10. card 卡片　11. ask 邀请　12. wrong 错误的
13. dear 哎呀　14. library card 图书卡,借书证　15. make a home library 建一个家庭图书馆
16. a good idea 一个好主意　17. on this shelf 在这个架子上
18. in the wrong place 在错误的地方

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Let's make a home library. 让我们建一个家庭图书馆吧。
2. These are all books about science. 这些是所有关于科学的书。
3. — Where are the books about sports, please? 请问,有关运动的书在哪儿?
   —They are on Shelf C. 它们在 C 列书架上。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen, read and act out.

原文	译文
Ms Smart: A friend sent these books and CDs to us. Let's make a home library.	斯马特女士:一个朋友寄给我们这些书和光盘。让我们建个家庭图书馆吧。
Lingling: That's a good idea.	玲玲:那是个好主意。
Amy: These are all books about science.	埃米:这些是所有关于科学的书。
Lingling: Let's put them on this shelf.	玲玲:让我们把它们放到这个书架上。
Amy: Here you are. Let's put them with the CDs.	埃米:给你。让我们把它们和光盘放在一起。
Lingling: OK.	玲玲:好的。
Amy: What are these big books? They're heavy.	埃米:这些大书是什么?它们很重。
Lingling: They're dictionaries. We can put them here.	玲玲:它们是字典。我们可以把它们放在这儿。

Amy: These are the library cards for our friends.	**埃米**:这些是给我们的朋友的图书卡。
Lingling: Great! Now we can ask them to come.	**玲玲**:太好了!现在我们可以邀请他们来了。
Sam: Where are the books about sports, please?	**萨姆**:请问,有关运动的书在哪儿?
Lingling: They are on Shelf C.	**玲玲**:它们在 C 列书架上。
Sam: No, they aren't. These books are about art.	**萨姆**:不,它们不在。这些书是关于美术的。
Lingling: What? Oh, they're in the wrong place.	**玲玲**:什么?哦,它们放错位置了。
John: Where are the books about animals?	**约翰**:关于动物的书在哪儿?
Lingling: They're on Shelf B.	**玲玲**:它们在 B 列书架上。
John: I can't find them. The books on Shelf B are about computers.	**约翰**:我找不到它们。B 列书架上的书是关于电脑的。
Lingling: Oh dear!	**玲玲**:哎呀!

考点突破营

1. Let's make a home library. 让我们建个家庭图书馆吧。

解析:此句是以 let 开头的祈使句,用于建议他人与自己一起做某事。let's 的完整形式是 let us,意为"让我们"。句型结构:Let's ＋动词原形＋其他.

例句:Let's go to the park this afternoon! 我们今天下午去公园吧!

拓展:祈使句的类型:

①Do(动词原形)＋其他. **例句**:Come here. 来这里。

②Be＋名词/形容词＋其他. **例句**:Be quiet! 安静!

③Don't＋动词原形＋其他. **例句**:Don't walk on the grass. 不要践踏草坪。

④No＋名词/动词-ing 形式. **例句**:No smoking! 禁止吸烟!

2. These are all books about science. 这些是所有关于科学的书。

解析:此句型用于介绍某些物品的类别。these 是指示代词,意为"这些",指代离说话人较近的某些物品。如果要指代离说话人较远的某些物品,则用 those。about 意为"关于",后面通常接表示类别的名词。句型结构:These are＋物品(复数)＋about＋类别.

例句:These are books about animals. 这些是关于动物的书。

3. —Where are the books about sports, please? 请问,有关运动的书在哪儿?

—They are on Shelf C. 它们在 C 列书架上。

解析:此句为 where 引导的特殊疑问句,用于询问某类物品在哪里。句型结构:Where are the + 物品(复数) + about + 类别(+ 其他)? 答语:They are + 地点状语(+ 其他).

Unit 2 We can find information from books and CDs.

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. information 信息　2. e-book 电子书　3. project 项目　4. guide 介绍,指南,手册

5. film 电影　6. way 方法,方式　7. on 关于　8. topic 话题　9. as well 又,还,也

10. do a science project 做一个科学项目　11. get information 获取信息

12. different ways 不同的方法　13. find information 找到信息　14. on this topic 关于这个话题

二、我要掌握的句型

1. I want a Chinese book. 我想要一本语文书。

2. Where can I find it? 我可以在哪里找到它?

3. We can find information from books and CDs. 我们可以从书和光盘上找到信息。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen and read.

原 文	译 文
We are going to do a science project about animals. This is a guide for us to get information from the school library. We can find information from books and CDs. We can find information from films and e-books as well. There are lots of different ways to find information on this topic.	我们打算做一个关于动物的科学项目。这是一个我们从学校图书馆得到信息的指南。我们可以从书和光盘上找到信息。我们也可以从电影和电子书上找到信息。有许多不同的方法来找到关于这个话题的信息。

考点突破营

1. I want a Chinese book. 我想要一本语文书。

解析:此句用来表达某人想要某物。want 意为“想要”,后面可接名词或代词,表示“想要某物”。也可接动词不定式,表示“想要做某事”。当主语为第三人称单数时要用 wants。

句型结构:主语 + want/wants + 某物.

2. Where can I find it? 我可以在哪里找到它?

解析:此句为 where 引导的特殊疑问句,询问自己在哪里能找到某物。where 意为“哪里”,find 意为“找到”。句型结构:Where can I find + 某物? 答句:You can find + 某物 + on/in/under + 地点.

3. We can find information from books and CDs. 我们可以从书和光盘上找到信息。

解析:此句描述某人能从某处找到信息。can 意为“能”,是情态动词,后面必须接动词原形。find 意为“找到”,from 意为“从”。句型结构:主语 + can + find information from + 其他.

我是小作家

描写学校图书馆的作文

一、思维步骤:

1. 学校图书馆要围绕图书馆的书籍来写,时态要用一般现在时。
2. 描写时可以先总体介绍学校图书馆,然后说明图书馆里有哪些书籍,以及学习或借书的情况。
3. 简单总结,并通读检查。

二、精彩词句:

1. There is a library in my school.
2. There are lots of books in the library. There are many books about … on Shelf … We can find much information in the library.
3. I often read books in the library. I also borrow books from the library.
4. I like my school library very much.

三、经典范文:

My school library

There is a library in my school. It's big. There are lots of books in the library. There are many books about Chinese on Shelf A. There are many storybooks on Shelf B. There are many books about English on Shelf C. We can find much information in the library. I like reading. I often read books in the library. I also borrow books from the library. I like my school library very much.

Module 5

Unit 1 It's big and light.

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. light 轻的　2. hard 困难的,费力的　3. broken 坏的,破的　4. pocket 口袋,兜
5. umbrella 雨伞　6. wheel 轮子　7. easy 容易的,不费力的　8. take 选择要,选择购买
9. look at 看　10. big and light 又大又轻　11. department store 百货商店
12. sales assistant 售货员,营业员

二、我要掌握的句型

1. This black bag is nice. 这个黑色的包好看。
2. And it's got two pockets. 而且它有两个口袋。
3. It's big and light. 它又大又轻。
4. It'll be easy for you to carry. 对您来说它易于携带。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen, read and act out.

原文	译文
Ms Smart: Lingling, look at your bag! It's broken. You can't take it to China. I'll buy you a new one.	斯马特女士:玲玲,看你的包!它破了。你不能带着它去中国。我要给你买个新的。
Lingling: Thank you.	玲玲:谢谢你。
At the Department Store	*在百货商店*
Lingling: This black bag is nice. It's big!	玲玲:这个黑色的包好看。它很大!
Ms Smart: But it's heavy. This green one is light. And it's got two pockets. You can put your umbrella there.	斯马特女士:但是它很重。这个绿色的包很轻。而且它还有两个口袋。你可以把你的雨伞放在那儿。
Lingling: But it's small.	玲玲:但是它很小。
Ms Smart: Look at this blue one. It's big and light.	斯马特女士:看这个蓝色的(包)。它又大又轻。
Lingling: Oh yes!	玲玲:噢,是的!
Sales assistant: And it's got four wheels. It'll be easy for you to carry.	售货员:而且它有四个轮子。对您来说它易于携带。

Ms Smart: Great! We'll take it.	斯马特女士：太好了！我们就要它了。
Lingling: Thank you very much.	玲玲：非常感谢你。

考点突破营

1. This black bag is nice. 这个黑色的包好看。

解析：此句型用来描述某物很漂亮。若物品为可数名词单数，be 动词用 is；若物品为可数名词复数时，be 动词用 are。句型结构：The/This/That ＋单数物品＋is nice.

2. And it's got two pockets. 而且它有两个口袋。

解析：此句型用来描述事物特征。it's got 是 it has got 的缩写形式，has got 意为“有”。句型结构：It's got＋宾语（某种特征）.

3. It's big and light. 它又大又轻。

解析：此句型用来描述事物在大小、轻重、颜色等方面的特征。句型结构：It's ＋形容词.

4. It'll be easy for you to carry. 对您来说它易于携带。

解析：此句型用来表达“对某人来说做某事……”，句中形容词可以是 easy，hard，difficult 等，it 是形式主语，真正的主语是后面的动词不定式“to carry”，for 意为“对……来说”。句型结构：It's ＋形容词＋for sb. ＋to do sth.

例句：It's easy for him to learn English well. 学好英语对他来说很容易。

Unit 2 It's too big for you.

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. too 太，过于　2. try 试，尝试　3. lovely 美丽的，可爱的；令人愉快的　4. take 携带　5. right 正确的，合适的　6. too big 太大

二、我要掌握的句型

1. But it's too big for you! 但是对你来说它太大了！
2. Try this white one. 试试这件白色的吧。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen and read.

原 文	译 文
Amy: Look at this blue T-shirt. It's nice.	埃米：看这件蓝色的 T 恤衫。它很好看。
Lingling: It has got a panda on it.	玲玲：它上面有一只熊猫。

Amy: But it's too big for you!	埃米:但是对你来说它太大了!
Lingling: Have you got a small one, please?	玲玲:请问,你有一个小的吗?
Sales assistant: Try this white one.	售货员:试试这件白色的吧。
Amy: That's lovely! You can take it to China.	埃米:真可爱呀! 你可以把它带回中国。

考点突破营

1. But it's too big for you! 但是对你来说它太大了!

解析:此句描述某事物对某人来说怎么样。too 意为"太,过于",后接形容词。for 为介词,后接宾语,意为"对……而言"。句型结构:主语 + be too + 形容词 + for sb.

易错点提示 for 后面接人称代词时要用宾格形式。

例句:It's too hard for me to climb the mountains. 爬山对我来说太难了。

2. Try this white one. 试试这件白色的吧。

解析:此句描述试试某物。句型结构:Try + this/that + 颜色 + 某物.

我是小作家

如何写购物类的小作文

一、思维步骤:

1. 描写购物经历,时态以一般过去时为主。
2. 先写购物目的,再写购物经过,最后写购物结果。
3. 通读检查,注意一般过去时中动词的变化。

二、精彩词句:

1. Yesterday was my mother's birthday. I wanted to buy a gift for her.
2. I went to a big supermarket with my dad. There were lots of things in the supermarket.
3. At last, we bought a black bag for her.
4. We went home and gave it to my mother. She was very happy.

三、经典范文:

Shopping

Yesterday was my mother's birthday. I wanted to buy a gift for her. I went to a big supermarket with my dad. There were lots of things in the supermarket. We saw a red dress. It was very beautiful. But Dad said, "It's too long for your mother. And she doesn't like red." At last, we bought a black bag for her. It looked very nice. Then we went home and gave it to my mother. She was very happy.

Module 6

Unit 1 I went there last year.

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. moon 月亮,月球　2. get 到达　3. west 西,西部,西方,向西方　4. parent 母亲;父亲;家长
5. stay 停留　6. July 七月　7. south 南,南部,南方,向南方　8. remember 记得
9. June 六月　10. in July 在七月　11. some interesting photos 一些有趣的照片
12. in the south of China 在中国的南部　13. last year 去年
14. in the west of China 在中国的西部　15. every year 每年

拓展: January 一月　February 二月　March 三月　April 四月　May 五月　August 八月
September 九月　October 十月　November 十一月　December 十二月

二、我要掌握的句型

1. I went there last year. 我去年去过那里。
2. —Did you go with your parents? 你和你的父母一起去的吗?
   —Yes, I did. 是的。
3. It's in the south of China. 它位于中国的南部。
4. I met them in June! 我六月份见过他们!

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen, read and act out.

原文	译文
Amy: Mum, look! Lingling has got some interesting photos.	埃米:妈妈,看!玲玲有一些有趣的照片。
Ms Smart: Can I see them, Lingling?	斯马特女士:我可以看看它们吗,玲玲?
Lingling: Of course.	玲玲:当然可以。
Lingling: They are photos of me and my family in China. This is Xinjiang. It's in the west of China. I went there last year.	玲玲:它们是我和我的家人在中国的照片。这是新疆。它位于中国的西部。我去年去过那里。
Amy: Did you go with your parents?	埃米:你和你的父母一起去的吗?
Lingling: Yes, I did. We stayed with my grandma for a week in July.	玲玲:是的。七月份,我们和奶奶待了一周。
Ms Smart: The mountains are really beautiful.	斯马特女士:这些山真漂亮。

Lingling: This is Hainan. It's in the south of China.	玲玲:这是海南。它位于中国的南部。
Amy: Who is this?	埃米:这是谁?
Lingling: It's my uncle. He lives there with his three children. My cousins visit Beijing every year.	玲玲:这是我的叔叔。他和他的三个孩子住在那里。我的堂兄弟们每年都来北京玩。
Ms Smart: Oh yes, I remember! I met them in June! They're Li people.	斯马特女士:噢,是的,我想起来了!六月份我见过他们!他们是黎族人。

考点突破营

1. I went there last year. 我去年去过那里。

解析:此句是一般过去时的陈述句,用来描述自己过去去过某地。went 是 go 的过去式,"go (to) + 某地"表示"去某地"。当某地为副词时,则省略 to,如 go there,go home 等。

句型结构:I went (to) + 某地 + 过去的时间.

2. —Did you go with your parents? 你和你的父母一起去的吗?

—Yes, I did. 是的。

解析:这是询问对方是否与某人一起去的问句及答句。did 是助动词,位于句首帮助构成一般过去时的一般疑问句,无实际意义,没有人称和数的变化。with 是介词,意思是"和……一起",后接宾语。当宾语是人称代词时,要用人称代词的宾格形式。

句型结构:Did you go with + 宾语?

答语:Yes, I/we did. 或者 No, I/we didn't.

3. It's in the south of China. 它位于中国的南部。

解析:此句可描述某地的方位。south 是方位词,意为"南方"。句型结构:某地 + is in the + 方位词 + of + 其他.

例句:Shenzhen is in the south of China. 深圳在中国的南部。

4. I met them in June! 我六月份见过他们!

解析:此句为一般过去时。met 是 meet 的过去式,"in + 月份"表示"在某月",them 是 they 的宾格。

Unit 2 She visited the Tianchi Lake.

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. east 东,东部,东方;向东方　2. best 最好的　3. north 北,北部,北方;向北方　4. rest 休息
5. rode(ride 的过去式)骑　6. have a rest 休息一下　7. last July 去年七月
8. ride a horse 骑马　9. climb the Tianshan Mountains 爬天山
10. visit the Tianchi Lake 游览天池　11. have a lovely time 玩得很开心

二、我要掌握的句型

1. She visited the Tianchi Lake. 她游览了天池。
2. Xinjiang is in the west of China. 新疆位于中国的西部。
3. She had a lovely time there. 她在那里过得很愉快。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen and read.

原 文	译 文
Last July Lingling went to Xinjiang with her parents. Xinjiang is in the west of China. She rode a horse. She climbed the Tianshan Mountains. She visited the Tianchi Lake. It was very beautiful. She had a lovely time there.	去年七月份,玲玲和她的父母去了新疆。新疆位于中国的西部。她骑了马。她爬了天山。她游览了天池。它很美丽。她在那里过得很愉快。

考点突破营

1. She visited the Tianchi Lake. 她游览了天池。

解析:此句为一般过去时的陈述句,用来描述某人游览过某地。visited 是 visit 的过去式,意为“参观、游览”,句型结构:某人 + visited + 某地(+ 过去时间).

例句: I visited the West Lake last month. 上个月我游览了西湖。

2. Xinjiang is in the west of China. 新疆位于中国的西部。

解析:此句用来描述某地方位。west 是方位词,表示方位的词还有 east,north,south 等。of 为介词,意为“……的”,表示所属关系。

句型结构:小地点 + is in the + 方位词 + of + 大地点.

例句: Hainan is in the south of China. 海南在中国的南部。

3. She had a lovely time there. 她在那里过得很愉快。

解析:have a lovely time 意为“玩得很开心”。

拓展:time 的不同词义:

①表示“时间”。**例句**:What time is it? 几点了?

②表示“时候”。**例句**:It's time to get up. 该起床了。

③表示“次,回”。**例句**:I read the word three times. 我把这个词读了三遍。

我是小作家

介绍自己暑假旅游经历的小作文

一、思维步骤:

1. 介绍自己假期旅游的情况,时态一般要用一般过去时。
2. 描述旅游经历。先介绍时间、地点和人物,再介绍自己在旅游过程中做过的事情,最后写自己的心情。
3. 通读检查,注意一般过去时句子中动词的变化。

二、精彩词句:

1. Last summer, I went to...
2. We climbed the mountain. We saw lots of things.
3. We had a lovely time there.

三、经典范文:

My summer holidays

Last summer, I went to Mount Tai for my holidays. I went there by train with my parents. We climbed the mountain. We saw lots of interesting things. At last we got to the top of Mount Tai. Mount Tai was really beautiful. We had a lovely time there.

Module 7

Unit 1 My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning.

考点直通车


扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. evening 傍晚，晚上　2. late 近日暮的；近深夜的；时间不早的　3. worker 工人
4. factory 制造厂；工厂　5. early 早的　6. taxi 出租车，计程车　7. go to work 上班
8. every evening 每天晚上　9. in a factory 在工厂里　10. a taxi driver 一名出租车司机

二、我要掌握的句型

1. My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning. 我的爸爸每天早上八点上班。
2. —What does he do? 他是做什么的？
   —He's a policeman. 他是一名警察。

翻译达人秀


课文朗读

② Listen, read and act out.

原文	译文
Daming: My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning.	大明：我的爸爸每天早上八点上班。
Fangfang: What does he do?	芳芳：他是做什么的？
Daming: He's a policeman.	大明：他是一名警察。
Fangfang: My father goes to work at six o'clock every evening.	芳芳：我爸爸每天晚上六点上班。
Daming: That's late. What does he do?	大明：那很晚啊。他是做什么的？
Fangfang: He's a worker in a factory.	芳芳：他是一个工厂的工人。
Daming: My mother goes to work at eleven o'clock every night.	大明：我妈妈每天晚上十一点上班。
Fangfang: That's very, very late. What does she do?	芳芳：那非常，非常晚啊。她是做什么的？
Daming: She's a nurse.	大明：她是一名护士。
Fangfang: My mother goes to work at half past five every morning.	芳芳：我妈妈每天早上五点三十分上班。
Daming: That's very early. What does she do?	大明：那很早啊。她是做什么的？

Fangfang: She's a taxi driver.	芳芳:她是一名出租车司机。
Fangfang: Look! Here's my mother!	芳芳:看!这是我妈妈!
Fangfang's mother: Hello, children. I'll take you to school.	芳芳的妈妈:你们好,孩子们。我将带你们去学校。
Fangfang and Daming: Thank you!	芳芳和大明:谢谢你!

考点突破营

1. My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning. 我的爸爸每天早上八点上班。

解析:此句为一般现在时,用来描述他人何时去上班。一般现在时的句子中常有 always(总是),often(经常),usually(通常),sometimes(有时),every day(每天)等表示频率的词语。此句中主语是 my father,是第三人称单数,所以谓语动词 go 要用第三人称单数形式 goes。句型结构:主语 + go(es) to work at + 时间(+ 其他).

2. —What does he do? 他是做什么的?

—He's a policeman. 他是一名警察。

解析:这是询问某人职业的问句和答句。当问句中主语为第三人称单数时,助动词用 does;当问句中主语不是第三人称单数时,助动词用 do。答语中 be 动词的形式要随主语人称和数的变化而变化。句型结构:What do/does + 主语 + do? 答句:主语 + be 动词 + a/an + 职业.

Unit 2 I'll be home at seven o'clock.

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. quarter 一刻钟　2. to (距整点)差……　3. worry 焦虑,担心

4. a quarter to eight 七点四十五分　5. half past eight 八点半　6. at eight o'clock 八点整

二、我要掌握的句型

1. It's six o'clock now. 现在六点了。

It's half past six. 六点半了。

It's a quarter to seven. 六点四十五了。

2. —What time will you be home? 你将几点到家?

—I'll be home at seven o'clock. 我将七点到家。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

②Listen and read.

原文	译文
Sam: Dad, it's six o'clock now. Will you be home at seven o'clock?	萨姆：爸爸，现在六点了。你将在七点到家吗？
Mr Smart: Yes, I will.	斯马特先生：是的。
Amy: It's half past six. Are you going to be late, Dad?	埃米：现在六点半了。你要迟到吗，爸爸？
Mr Smart: Don't worry! I'll be home at seven o'clock. Why?	斯马特先生：别担心！我将七点到家。为什么（你觉得我会迟到呢）？
Ms Smart: It's a quarter to seven. What time will you be home?	斯马特女士：六点四十五了。你几点到家？
Mr Smart: I'll be home at seven o'clock.	斯马特先生：我将七点到家。
Amy: It's seven o'clock. Here he is.	埃米：七点了。他来了。
All: Happy birthday!	所有人：生日快乐！
Mr Smart: Thank you!	斯马特先生：谢谢你们！

考点突破营

1. It's six o'clock now. 现在六点了。　It's half past six. 六点半了。

It's a quarter to seven. 六点四十五了。

解析：这三个句子都用来表达时间：

①o'clock 意为“……点钟”。表示整点的时间可以用：钟点数 + o'clock，如：three o'clock 三点整。

②half 表示“半小时”。表示几点半可以用：half + past + 钟点数，如：half past seven 七点半。

③ a quarter 表示“一刻钟”。

几点过一刻可以用：a quarter past + 钟点数，例如：a quarter past five 五点十五。

几点差一刻可以用：a quarter to +（钟点数 +1），例如：a quarter to five 四点四十五。

2. —What time will you be home? 你将几点到家？

—I'll be home at seven o'clock. 我将七点到家。

解析：will 意为“将要”，这是询问和回答别人何时到家的句子。

句型结构：What time will + 某人 + be home? 答句：主语 + will be home at + 时间（+ 其他）.

易错点提示 at 后面接具体时间，此句型中，没有人称和数的变化。

我是小作家

描写家庭成员的日常活动的作文

一、思维步骤：

1. 描写家庭成员日常活动时，时态要用一般现在时。
2. 描写时可以先简单介绍自己的家庭成员，然后介绍他们的职业，最后介绍家人上班或上学时间。
3. 通读检查，注意主语为第三人称单数时句子中动词的变化。

二、精彩词句：

1. There are three people in my family.
2. My mother is a teacher. She goes to work at half past seven every morning.
3. I love my family.

三、经典范文：

My family

There are three people in my family, my mother, my father and me. My mother is a teacher. She goes to work at half past seven every morning. My father is a driver. He goes to work at six o'clock in the morning. I am a pupil. I go to school at eight o'clock. Our school starts at half past eight. We are busy every day. We are at home at five o'clock every afternoon. I love my family.

英美文化角

美国人的时间观念

一、美国人惜时如金

在美国人的生活中，有两样东西他们确实在小心地节省：时间和人力。美国人认为时间可以被安排、节省、浪费、侵占、消磨等，还可以对时间收费，因为他们认为时间是一种宝贵的资源，是一种珍贵的商品。一般情况下接待来访者，美国人不会花太多时间与来访者闲聊，或者是先去饭店宴请宾客以建立友好合作关系。所以，在与客人简单地、礼节性地寒暄后，他们很快就会谈及正题。由于美国人非常珍惜时间，所以他们很讨厌那些不知趣的浪费别人时间的人。

二、美国人守时观念强，严格的单时制

在美国，正式的约会必须准时到达。若约会迟到超过 10 分钟，就应该向对方道歉或解释原因。知道自己会迟到的人往往会先打个电话告诉对方。如果正式场合约会无故迟到，则会被认为是不负责任。如果是非正式聚会，那么比规定时间晚到五分钟或七八分钟是合乎礼仪的，但绝不能提前到达。提早到达会被认为是不礼貌的，会引起主人的不快。但在中国，人们通常认为提前赴约是礼貌的。

Module 8

Unit 1 Will you help me?

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. paper 纸　2. Chinese 中国人的　3. so 如此,这样　4. word 词,字
5. make a kite 做一个风筝　6. in New York 在纽约　7. of course 当然
8. a Chinese dragon 一条中国龙　9. a great present 一个很棒的礼物
10. the Chinese word 汉字　11. a great idea 一个好主意

二、我要掌握的句型

1. I'll make a kite! 我将做个风筝!
2. Will you help me? 你会帮助我吗?
3. What about a toy panda? 一个玩具熊猫怎么样?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen, read and act out.

原文	译文
Daming: I'm going to visit my cousin in New York. His name is Simon. What present can I take?	大明:我打算去拜访我在纽约的堂弟。他的名字是西蒙。我可以带什么礼物呢?
Fangfang: What about a toy panda?	芳芳:一个玩具熊猫怎么样?
Daming: I think he's got a toy panda. His mother and grandma are Chinese.	大明:我认为他有一个玩具熊猫。他的妈妈和外祖母都是中国人。
Fangfang: What about a kite?	芳芳:一个风筝怎么样?
Daming: Good idea! I'll make a kite!	大明:好主意! 我将做个风筝!
Fangfang: But will it be windy in New York?	芳芳:但是纽约会刮风吗?
Daming: I think so.	大明:我认为会。
Daming: Will you help me?	大明:你会帮助我吗?
Fangfang: Of course I will.	芳芳:我当然会。
Fangfang: Daming, your cousin will love this kite. It's a Chinese dragon.	芳芳:大明,你堂弟将会喜欢这个风筝的。它是条中国龙。
Daming: Thank you for your help. It will be a great present.	大明:谢谢你的帮助。它会是个很棒的礼物。

Fangfang: You can write the Chinese word for "dragon" on it.	芳芳:你可以在上面写上汉字"龙"。
Daming: That's a great idea!	大明:那是个好主意!

考点突破营

1. I'll make a kite! 我将做个风筝!

解析:此句为一般将来时,用来表达某人将要做某事。I'll 是 I will 的缩写,表示"我将要",后面接动词原形。句型结构:主语 + will + 动词原形 + 其他.

2. Will you help me? 你会帮助我吗?

解析:此句为一般将来时的一般疑问句,用来询问某人是否将要做某事,常用"Yes"或"No"回答。will 意为"将要、将会",放在句首。句型结构:Will + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他? 肯定回答:Yes,主语 + will. 否定回答:No,主语 + won't.

例句:—Will you play football? 你要踢足球吗? —Yes,I will. 是的。

3. What about a toy panda? 一个玩具熊猫怎么样?

解析:此句型用来向他人提建议。what about 是固定短语,意为"怎么样",后接代词宾格、名词或动词-ing 形式。句型结构:What about + 名词/代词宾格/动词-ing 形式?

例句:What about making a kite? 做个风筝怎么样?

Unit 2 I made a kite.

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. drew (draw 的过去式)画　2. cut(cut 的过去式)剪,切,割　3. piece 张,片,块
4. paint (用颜料)绘画,着色　5. put(put 的过去式)放,安放　6. stick 小木棍,小木条
7. tied(tie 的过去式)扎上,系上　8. string 线,绳子　9. draw a dragon 画一条龙
10. cut the paper 剪这张纸　11. fly my kite 放我的风筝　12. a piece of yellow paper 一张黄纸
13. put...on...把……放在……上　14. tie...to...把……系在……上

二、我要掌握的句型

1. I made a kite. 我做了一个风筝。
2. I drew a dragon on a piece of yellow paper. 我在一张黄纸上画了一条龙。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen and read.

原 文	译 文
I made a kite	**我做了一个风筝**
I drew a dragon on a piece of yellow paper.	我在一张黄纸上画了一条龙。
I painted it.	我给它着了色。
I cut the paper.	我剪了这张纸。
I put sticks on it.	我在它上面放了小木棍。
I tied strings to it.	我给它系上了绳子。
Then I could fly my kite.	然后我可以放我的风筝了。

考点突破营

1. I made a kite. 我做了一个风筝。
   解析:此句为一般过去时的肯定句,一般过去时表示动作发生的时间是过去。如果句子中有yesterday(昨天),last night(昨晚),two years ago(两年前)等表示过去的时间状语,句子应用一般过去时。句型结构:主语 + 动词过去式 + 其他.
2. I drew a dragon on a piece of yellow paper. 我在一张黄纸上画了一条龙。
   解析:此句中 a piece of 意为"一张",常与不可数名词连用。paper 意为"纸",是不可数名词。当表达复数意思时,piece 要变成复数形式。例如:three pieces of paper 三张纸。

我是小作家

如何写自己的周末活动?

一、思维步骤:

1. 写自己周末将要进行的活动时,时态要用一般将来时。
2. 描写时先总写周末要做的事,再按某种特定的顺序分别写出计划要做的事。
3. 通读检查。

二、精彩词句:

1. Tomorrow is Sunday. I am going to visit my grandparents with my father and mother.
2. My father will … My mother will … I will …
3. We will have a lovely time.

三、经典范文:

My weekend

Tomorrow is Sunday. I am going to visit my grandparents with my father and mother. We are going to buy some things for them. My father will buy a nice coat for my grandma. My mother will buy some food and vegetables. She is going to cook some delicious food for us. I will play chess with my grandpa. Because my grandpa likes playing chess. We will have a lovely time.

Module 9

Unit 1 We laughed a lot.

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. laugh 笑　2. wore (wear 的过去式)穿　3. letter 信,书信　4. theatre 剧院
5. women (woman 的复数形式)女性,妇女　6. actor 演员
7. told (tell 的过去式)口述,讲(故事等)　8. joke 笑话　9. after 在……后
10. show (尤指剧院的)演出,表演　11. restaurant 饭店,餐馆　12. ready 准备好的
13. a children's theatre 一家儿童剧院　14. tell jokes 讲笑话　15. laugh a lot 开怀大笑
16. be ready for... 为……做好准备

二、我要掌握的句型

1. The women wore men's clothes. 女人们穿着男人们的衣服。
2. The actors told lots of jokes. 演员们讲了很多笑话。
3. We laughed a lot. 我们开怀大笑。
4. Are you ready for your trip to the US? 你为你的美国之旅做好准备了吗?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen and read.

原文	译文
Daming: Wow! I've got two letters in English! One is from the UK and one is from the US.	**大明:**哇!我收到了两封英文信!一封来自英国,一封来自美国。
15 Marling Street London, NW2 UK	马林街 15 号 伦敦,NW2 英国
Dear Daming, Last week we went to a children's theatre. The men wore women's clothes. The women wore men's clothes. The actors told lots of jokes. It was very funny. We laughed a lot. Children here love the theatre. After the show we went to a restaurant. We all ate hamburgers and chips. Are you ready for your trip to the US? Love, Lingling	亲爱的大明: 上周我们去了一家儿童剧院。(在那里)男人们穿着女人们的衣服。女人们穿着男人们的衣服。演员们讲了很多笑话。非常滑稽。我们开怀大笑。这儿的小孩们喜欢这个剧院。 看完演出后我们去了一家餐馆。我们都吃了汉堡包和薯条。 你为你的美国之旅做好准备了吗? 爱你的, 玲玲

考点突破营

1. The women wore men's clothes. 女人们穿着男人们的衣服。
解析:此句为一般过去时。women 是 woman 的复数形式,men 是 man 的复数形式,wore 是 wear 的过去式。
2. The actors told lots of jokes. 演员们讲了很多笑话。
解析:此句为一般过去时。told 是 tell 的过去式,tell jokes 意为"讲笑话"。lots of 意为"许多",后面接可数名词复数或不可数名词。
3. We laughed a lot. 我们开怀大笑。
解析:此句为一般过去时。a lot 意为"很,非常",放在所修饰的动词后,相当于 very much。
例句:I miss you a lot. 我非常想念你。
4. Are you ready for your trip to the US? 你为你的美国之旅做好准备了吗?
解析:此句是以 be 动词开头的一般疑问句,用于询问对方是否准备好了。ready 是形容词,意为"准备好的",be ready for...意为"为……做好准备",for 是介词,意为"为",后面可以接名词、代词或动词-ing 形式。句型结构:Are you ready for +其他?
例句:Are you ready for your show? 你为演出做好准备了吗?

Unit 2 Mum bought new T-shirts for you.

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. borrow 借入,借来　2. read (read 的过去式)读　3. in 在(将来一段时间)之后
4. another 另一个　5. history 历史　6. ask 问,询问　7. question 问题　8. forget 忘,忘记
9. bring 带来,拿来　10. soon 不久,很快　11. at all 一点都
12. in three weeks 在三个星期后　13. Chinese history 中国历史
14. borrow a bike 借一辆自行车　15. Chinese songs 中国歌曲　16. in the evening 在晚上

二、我要掌握的句型

1. We are going to see you in three weeks. 三个星期后我们就能见到你了。
2. Mum bought new T-shirts for you. 妈妈给你买了新的 T 恤衫。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen and read.

原文	译文
Dear Daming, How are you? We are going to see you in three weeks. Dad's going to put another bed in my room. Mum bought new T-shirts for you. Dad read a book about Chinese history. He is going to ask you some questions. And we borrowed a bike for you.	亲爱的大明: 你好吗?三个星期后我们就能见到你了。爸爸要把另一张床放在我的房间。妈妈给你买了新 T 恤衫。爸爸读了一本关于中国历史的书。他要问你一些问题。另外我们还给你借了一辆自行车。

Don't forget to bring some CDs of Chinese songs. We can listen to them in the evening. See you soon! Simon	不要忘了带一些中国歌曲的唱片。我们可以在晚上听听它们。 到时见! 西蒙

考点突破营

1. We are going to see you in three weeks. 三个星期后我们就能见到你了。

解析:此句为一般将来时,用来表达某人将要做某事。一般将来时常与表示将来的时间状语连用。此句中 in three weeks 意为"三个星期后"。be going to 表示按计划或安排将要发生的事情或动作,意为"打算;将要",后面接动词原形。be 动词要随主语人称和数的变化而变化。

句型结构:主语 + be going to + 动词原形 + 其他.

2. Mum bought new T-shirts for you. 妈妈给你买了新的 T 恤衫。

解析:此句用来表达给某人买了某物。bought 是 buy 的过去式,意为"买",后面接某物。for 是介词,意为"给",后面接某人。句型结构:主语 + bought + 某物 + for + 某人.

拓展:表达"给某人买某物",也可以用 buy sb. sth.,此时所买物品不能用代词的宾格形式。

例句:Mum bought you new T-shirts. 妈妈给你买了新 T 恤衫。

我是小作家

如何写信向朋友描述做过的事的作文

一、思维步骤:

1. 了解英文书信的格式。
2. 书信内容写自己做过的事情,时态用一般过去时。
3. 通读检查,注意不同时态中动词的变化。

二、精彩词句:

1. 开头: Dear ..., How are you?
2. 正文: Last week I went to ...
3. 结尾: See you soon! Love, ...

三、经典范文:

Dear Tom,

How are you? Thank you for your letter. Last night I went to a show with my friends. The actors danced with us. They sang lots of songs. It was very nice. We laughed a lot. We were very happy.

I am going to see you in two months. We can go to the show together.

See you soon!

Love,

Jack

Module 10

Unit 1 Where are you going?

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. when 在什么时候　2. end 结束,终止　3. nervous 紧张的,情绪不安的　4. airport 机场
5. ticket 票　6. passport 护照　7. safe 安全的,平安的　8. all right 没事,没问题
9. feel nervous 感到紧张　10. make a list 列一张清单

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —Where are you going? 你打算去哪里?
   —To the airport. 去机场。
2. —What are you going to take? 你打算带些什么?
   —Clothes, shoes, presents, the ticket, my passport... 衣服、鞋子、礼物、机票、我的护照……
3. —When are you going to the airport? 你打算什么时候去机场?
   —At seven o'clock tomorrow morning. 明天早上七点钟。
4. —Who's going to the airport with you? 谁将和你一起去机场?　—Who? Mum! 谁? 妈妈!

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen, read and act out.

原文	译文
Grandma: Hello, Daming.	奶奶:你好,大明。
Daming: Hello, Grandma.	大明:你好,奶奶。
Grandma: Are you ready for your trip tomorrow?	奶奶:你为明天的旅行做好准备了吗?
Daming: I think so. But I feel nervous.	大明:我想是的。但是我感到紧张。
Grandma: It will be all right. I'm going to meet you in New York.	奶奶:一切都会好的。我会在纽约和你见面的。
Grandma: You can make a list of things to do.	奶奶:你可以把要做的事情列一个清单。
Daming: That's a good idea!	大明:那是个好主意!
Grandma: Where are you going?	奶奶:你打算去哪里?
Daming: To the airport.	大明:去机场。
Grandma: What are you going to take?	奶奶:你打算带些什么?
Daming: Clothes, shoes, presents, the ticket, my passport...	大明:衣服、鞋子、礼物、机票、我的护照……
Grandma: When are you going to the airport?	奶奶:你打算什么时候去机场?
Daming: At seven o'clock tomorrow morning.	大明:明天早上七点钟。

Grandma: Who's going to the airport with you?	奶奶:谁将和你一起去机场?
Daming: Who? Mum!	大明:谁? 妈妈!
Grandma: Great! Safe trip, Daming!	奶奶:太好了! 一路平安,大明!

考点突破营

1. —Where are you going? 你打算去哪里? —To the airport. 去机场。

解析:此句用来询问对方打算去哪里。where 是特殊疑问词,意为"哪里",放在句首引导特殊疑问句。are 是 be going to 结构中的 be 动词,在特殊疑问句中要放在主语前,be 动词应随主语人称和数的变化而变化。

句型结构:Where are you going (+其他)? 答句:I am going to + 地点.

2. —What are you going to take? 你打算带些什么?

—Clothes, shoes, presents, the ticket, my passport…衣服、鞋子、礼物、机票、我的护照……

解析:此句用来询问对方打算做什么。take 在此处意为"拿;带",故回答内容是将要带的东西。句型结构:What are you going to + 动词原形(+其他)?

3. —When are you going to the airport? 你打算什么时候去机场?

—At seven o'clock tomorrow morning. 明天早上七点钟。

解析:此句用来询问对方什么时候去某地。由疑问词 when 可知答句应回答时间。

句型结构:When are you going to + 某地?

4. —Who's going to the airport with you? 谁将和你一起去机场? —Who? Mum! 谁? 妈妈!

解析:此句用来询问谁打算和对方一起去某地。由疑问词 who 可知答句应回答人。

Unit 2 I'm in New York now.

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. pet 宠物 2. speak 说,讲 3. building 建筑物 4. American 美国的,美国人的;美国人
5. more 更多的(量),较多的(量) 6. find out 发现,弄清 7. speak English 讲英语
8. speak Chinese 讲汉语 9. arrive here 到达这里 10. at the airport 在机场
11. tall buildings 高楼大厦 12. try American food 尝尝美式食物
13. make Chinese food 做中国菜

二、我要掌握的句型

1. I'm in New York now. 我现在在纽约。
2. I arrived here yesterday. 我昨天到了这里。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

② Listen and read.

原文	译文
Dear Mum and Dad, I'm in New York now. I arrived here yesterday. I'm very happy. Grandma and Cousin Simon met me at the airport. We took a yellow taxi to their home. New York is very beautiful. There are lots of tall buildings, cars and people. Grandma made Chinese food for me. But I want to try American food. I want to find out more about the US. I will write again soon. Love, Daming	亲爱的妈妈爸爸： 我现在在纽约。我昨天到了这里。我非常高兴。奶奶和堂兄西蒙在机场接的我。我们打了一辆黄色的出租车到他们的家。纽约非常漂亮。有许多高楼大厦、汽车和人。 奶奶给我做了中国菜。但是我想尝尝美式食物。我想更多地了解美国。我很快会再写信的。 爱你们的， 大明

考点突破营

1. I'm in New York now. 我现在在纽约。
解析：此句为一般现在时的肯定句，描述某人现在在某个城市。be 动词随主语人称和数的变化而变化。“in ＋城市”表示“在某个城市”。句型结构：主语＋be 动词＋in＋城市＋now.
2. I arrived here yesterday. 我昨天到了这里。
解析：此句为一般过去时的肯定句，描述某人在过去某个时间到达了某地。arrived 是 arrive 的过去式，意为“到达”，后面可直接接表示地点的副词，如 here，there，home 等；当接表示地点的名词时，需在 arrive 和地点名词之间加介词 at 或 in，at 用在小地点前，in 用在大地点前。
句型结构：主语＋arrived(at/in)＋地点＋过去时间.
例句：He arrived in Beijing at five o'clock in the morning. 他早上五点钟到达了北京。

我是小作家

如何描写上周末的生活的作文

一、思维步骤：
1. 描写上周末的生活，时态要用一般过去时。
2. 描写时可以先总体说明上周的情况，然后按时间顺序写周末做的事，最后写自己的感受。
3. 通读检查，注意一般过去时和一般现在时句子中动词的变化。

二、精彩词句：
1. I had a busy weekend.
2. On Saturday morning I cleaned my room. On Saturday afternoon I did my homework.
3. I had a great time.

三、经典范文：

My last weekend

I had a busy weekend. On Saturday morning I cleaned my room. On Saturday afternoon I did my homework. On Saturday evening my grandma cooked fish for me. I ate a lot. It was delicious. On Sunday morning I went to the library and read a book about Chinese history. On Sunday afternoon I played computer games. On Sunday evening I watched a football game on TV. It was very exciting. I had a great time.

Module 1

Unit 1 We lived in a small house.

一、核心单词。（英汉互译）

1. still _____ 2. programme _____ 3. grandchildren _____
4. interviewer _____ 5. different _____ 6. television _____
7. 生活_____ 8. 足够的_____ 9. 以前_____
10. 改变,变化 _____ 11. 女士,夫人_____

二、写出下列动词的过去式。

1. is _____ 2. are _____ 3. aren't _____
4. do _____ 5. watch _____ 6. live _____

三、重点句型。（英汉互译）

1. 谢谢你对我们说(这些)。_____
2. (过去)我们住在一个小房子里。_____
3. (过去)我们没有足够的食物。_____
4. 没有很多公共汽车。_____
5. 我们有很多食物。_____
6. 有很多公共汽车和小汽车。_____
7. It's a programme about China. _____
8. Life was very different in China many years ago. _____
9. How was it different? _____
10. How about now? _____

Unit 2 She didn't have a television.

一、核心单词。（英汉互译）

1. 夜晚,夜间_____ 2. 田地_____ 3. 工作;劳动;干活儿_____
4. 火,炉火_____ 5. 收音机_____ 6. (用于否定句中)也不,也没_____
7. 写_____ 8. 希望_____ 9. telephone _____
10. couldn't = could not _____

二、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. I watched a television programme about China last night. _____
2. An old lady talked about her life many years ago. _____
3. 她在田地里工作。_____
4. 她在炉火上做饭。_____
5. 她没有电视机,也没有收音机。_____
6. 她不会读,也不会写。_____

Module 2

Unit 1 She learnt English.

一、核心短语。（汉译英）

1. 学过跳舞_____　2. 学过烹饪_____　3. 教过语言_____
4. 写过一本书_____　5. 外语_____　6. 学过英语_____

二、写出下列动词的过去式。

1. learn _____　2. teach _____　3. write _____　4. dance _____

三、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. She was a dancer. _____
2. She danced in lots of Chinese cities. _____
3. 她学过外语吗？_____
4. 她学过英语。_____
5. ——他也学过英语吗？——不，他没学过。_____
6. 但是他现在正在学英语！_____

Unit 2 Mr Li was a teacher.

一、核心短语。（汉译英）

1. 上学_____　2. 学习过数学_____　3. 教语文_____
4. 二十年前_____　5. 一位好学生_____　6. （过去）学习非常刻苦_____

二、仿照例子写一写。

例：go	goes	went	going
1. like	_____	_____	_____
2. learn	_____	_____	_____
3. teach	_____	_____	_____
4. study	_____	_____	_____
5. write	_____	_____	_____

三、重点句型。（英汉互译）

1. 二十年前，李先生是一名教师。_____
2. 他教过语文。_____
3. 他（过去）学习非常刻苦。_____
4. 现在李先生不工作了。_____
5. 他正在学习英语。_____
6. He liked going to school. _____
7. He likes working at school. _____

Module 3

Unit 1 She had eggs and sausages.

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 汉堡包_____ 2. 英国(式)的_____ 3. 早餐,早饭_____
4. 午餐,午饭_____ 5. 三明治_____ 6. 食品;菜肴_____
7. traditional _____ 8. fish and chips _____

二、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. 昨天她吃了一顿英式早餐。_____
2. ——她吃了什么？_____
   ——她吃了鸡蛋和香肠。_____
3. 她午饭吃了什么？_____
4. It's a traditional English dish. _____
5. I've got an email from Lingling. _____
6. —Does Lingling like English food? _____
   —Yes, she does. She says it's delicious! _____

Unit 2 Sam ate four hamburgers.

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 给(give 的过去式)_____ 2. 今夜,今晚 _____
3. 吃(eat 的过去式)_____ 4. 很,非常_____
5. miss Chinese food _____ 6. 做中国菜 _____

二、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. 她把她的汉堡包给了萨姆。_____
2. 他非常喜欢汉堡包。_____
3. 我想念中国菜。_____
4. Today Sam ate four hamburgers at school! _____
5. Lingling doesn't like hamburgers. _____
6. Tonight Mum is going to cook Chinese food for us.
   _____

Module 4

Unit 1 Let's make a home library.

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 图书馆 _____　2. 学生 _____　3. 发送，寄（send 的过去式）_____
4. 错误的 _____　5. 主意，想法 _____　6. 放，安放 _____
7. 哎呀 _____　8. 重的，沉的 _____　9. 词典；字典 _____
10. 卡片 _____　11. 邀请 _____　12. CD _____
13. shelf _____　14. library card _____

二、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. 让我们建个家庭图书馆吧。_____
2. 这些是所有关于科学的书。_____
3. ——请问，有关运动的书在哪儿？_____
   ——它们在 C 列书架上。_____
4. ——这些大书是什么？_____
   ——它们是字典。_____
5. 我们没有给你的书。_____
6. Now we can ask them to come. _____
7. They're in the wrong place. _____

Unit 2 We can find information from books and CDs.

一、核心单词。（英汉互译）

1. information _____　2. e-book _____　3. project _____
4. guide _____　5. topic _____　6. 方法，方式 _____
7. 关于 _____　8. 电影 _____

二、核心短语。（英译汉）

1. do a science project _____　2. get information _____
3. find information _____　4. different ways _____
5. as well _____　6. on this topic _____

三、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. 我想要一本语文书。_____
2. 我可以在哪里找到它？_____
3. 我们可以从书和光盘上找到信息。_____
4. This is a guide for us to get information from the school library.
   _____
5. There are lots of different ways to find information on this topic.
   _____

Module 5

Unit 1 It's big and light.

一、核心词汇。(英汉互译)

1. 轻的_____ 2. 困难的_____ 3. 容易的_____
4. 口袋,兜_____ 5. 雨伞_____ 6. 选择要;选择购买_____
7. broken _____ 8. wheel _____ 9. department store _____
10. sales assistant _____

二、重点句子。(英汉互译)

1. 这个黑色的包好看。

_____

2. 而且它有两个口袋。

_____

3. 看这个蓝色的(包)。

_____

4. 它又大又轻。

_____

5. You can put your umbrella there.

_____

6. It'll be easy for you to carry.

_____

7. You can't take it to China.

_____

8. We'll take it.

_____

Unit 2 It's too big for you.

一、核心单词。(汉译英)

1. 太,过于_____ 2. 试,尝试_____
3. 美丽的,可爱的;令人愉快的_____

二、重点句子。(汉译英)

1. 但是对你来说它太大了! _____
2. 试试这件白色的吧。_____
3. 请问,你有一个小的吗? _____
4. 你可以把它带到中国。_____

Module 6

Unit 1 I went there last year.

一、核心单词。（英汉互译）

1. 月亮，月球_____　2. 到达_____　3. 西，西部，西方；向西方_____
4. 七月_____　5. 停留_____　6. 母亲；父亲；家长_____
7. 六月_____　8. remember_____　9. 南，南部，南方；向南方_____

二、核心短语。（英译汉）

1. some interesting photos_____　2. in July_____
3. in the south of China_____　4. last year_____
5. in the west of China_____　6. every year_____

三、重点句型。（英汉互译）

1. 这是新疆。我去年去过那里。_____
2. 它位于中国的西部。_____
3. We stayed with my grandma for a week in July._____
4. My cousins visit Beijing every year._____
5. He lives there with his three children._____
6. ——你和你的父母一起去的吗？　——是的。_____
7. ——假期你去哪里了？　——我去月球了。_____
8. ——你怎样到那里的？　——我用我的电脑。_____
9. 玲玲有一些有趣的照片。_____
10. 我可以看看它们吗？_____

Unit 2 She visited the Tianchi Lake.

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 东，东部，东方；向东方_____　2. 最好的_____
3. 北，北部，北方；向北方_____　4. 休息_____
5. 骑马_____　6. 骑（ride 的过去式）_____
7. 去年七月_____　8. have a rest_____
9. have a lovely time_____　10. visit the Tianchi Lakes_____
11. climb the Tianshan Mountains_____

二、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. 去年七月份玲玲和她的父母去了新疆。_____
2. 新疆位于中国的西部。_____
3. She had a lovely time there._____
4. East and west, home is the best._____

Module 7

Unit 1 My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning.

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 傍晚,晚上_____
2. 近日暮的;近深夜的;时间不早的_____
3. 工人_____
4. 制造厂;工厂_____
5. 早的_____
6. 出租车,计程车_____
7. go to work _____
8. every morning _____
9. every evening _____
10. every night _____
11. in a factory _____
12. a taxi driver _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 我的爸爸每天早上八点上班。_____
2. ——他是做什么的？_____
   ——他是一个工厂的工人。_____
3. ——爸爸,你明天早上会带我们去公园吗？_____
   ——是的。我会在七点半带你们去那儿。_____

Unit 2 I'll be home at seven o'clock.

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. quarter _____
2. （距整点）差……_____
3. 焦虑,担心_____
4. 七点四十五_____
5. 八点半_____
6. 八点整_____

二、重点句型。（英汉互译）

1. 现在六点了。_____
2. 六点半了。_____
3. 六点四十五了。_____
4. ——你将几点到家？_____
   ——我将七点到家。_____
5. —Will you be home at seven o'clock? _____
   —Yes, I will. _____
6. Are you going to be late, Dad? _____
7. Don't worry! _____
8. Here he is. _____

Module 8

Unit 1 Will you help me?

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 纸＿＿＿＿＿＿　2. 中国人的＿＿＿＿＿＿　3. 如此，这样＿＿＿＿＿＿
4. 词，字＿＿＿＿＿＿　5. 一个玩具熊猫＿＿＿＿＿＿　6. 做一个风筝＿＿＿＿＿＿
7. 在纽约＿＿＿＿＿＿　8. 汉字＿＿＿＿＿＿　9. a Chinese dragon ＿＿＿＿＿＿
10. a great present ＿＿＿＿＿＿　11. of course ＿＿＿＿＿＿　12. a great idea ＿＿＿＿＿＿

二、重点句型。（英汉互译）

1. 它会是个很棒的礼物。＿＿＿＿＿＿
2. 一个玩具熊猫怎么样？＿＿＿＿＿＿
3. 我将做个风筝！＿＿＿＿＿＿
4. 纽约将会刮风吗？＿＿＿＿＿＿
5. ——你会帮助我吗？＿＿＿＿＿＿
   ——我当然会。＿＿＿＿＿＿
6. I'm going to visit my cousin in New York. ＿＿＿＿＿＿
7. What present can I take? ＿＿＿＿＿＿
8. You can write the Chinese word for "dragon" on it. ＿＿＿＿＿＿

Unit 2 I made a kite.

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 张，片，块＿＿＿＿＿＿　2. 小木棍，小木条＿＿＿＿＿＿　3. 画一条龙＿＿＿＿＿＿
4. 剪这张纸＿＿＿＿＿＿　5. 放我的风筝＿＿＿＿＿＿　6. 一张黄纸＿＿＿＿＿＿
7. tie strings ＿＿＿＿＿＿

二、写出下列动词的过去式。

1. make ＿＿＿＿＿＿　2. draw ＿＿＿＿＿＿　3. cut ＿＿＿＿＿＿　4. paint ＿＿＿＿＿＿
5. put ＿＿＿＿＿＿　6. tie ＿＿＿＿＿＿　7. fly ＿＿＿＿＿＿　8. can ＿＿＿＿＿＿

三、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. 我做了一个风筝。＿＿＿＿＿＿
2. 我在它上面放了小木棍。＿＿＿＿＿＿
3. 我给它着了色。＿＿＿＿＿＿
4. 我剪了这张纸。＿＿＿＿＿＿
5. I drew a dragon on a piece of yellow paper. ＿＿＿＿＿＿
6. I tied strings to it. ＿＿＿＿＿＿
7. Then I could fly my kite. ＿＿＿＿＿＿

Module 9

Unit 1 We laughed a lot.

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 笑_____ 2. 信，书信_____ 3. 穿（wear 的过去式）_____
4. 剧院_____ 5. 女性，妇女_____ 6. 讲（故事等）（tell 的过去式）_____
7. 演员_____ 8. 笑话_____ 9. （尤指剧院的）演出，表演_____
10. 在……后_____ 11. 饭店，餐馆_____ 12. 准备好的_____
13. a children's theatre _____ 14. tell jokes _____ 15. laugh a lot _____

二、写出下列单词的复数形式。

1. man _____ 2. woman _____ 3. child _____

三、写出下列动词的过去式。

1. see _____ 2. wear _____ 3. get _____ 4. go _____
5. tell _____ 6. is _____ 7. laugh _____ 8. eat _____

四、重点句子。（汉译英）

1. 上周我们去了一家儿童剧院。_____
2. 女人们穿着男人们的衣服。_____
3. 演员们讲了很多笑话。_____
4. 我们开怀大笑。_____
5. 你为你的美国之旅做好准备了吗？_____

Unit 2 Mum bought new T-shirts for you.

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 借入，借来_____ 2. 一点都_____ 3. 读（read 的过去式）_____
4. 历史_____ 5. 另一个_____ 6. 在（将来一段时间）之后_____
7. 问，询问_____ 8. 带来，拿来_____ 9. forget _____
10. question _____ 11. soon _____ 12. in three weeks _____
13. Chinese history _____ 14. Chinese songs _____

二、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. 三个星期后我们就能见到你了。_____
2. 妈妈给你买了新 T 恤衫。_____
3. Don't forget to bring some CDs of Chinese songs. _____
4. We can listen to them in the evening. _____

Module 10

Unit 1 Where are you going?

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. all right _____　2. passport _____　3. 紧张的,情绪不安的_____
4. 在什么时候_____　5. 机场_____　6. 票_____
7. 结束,终止_____　8. 安全的_____　9. 感到紧张_____
10. 列一张清单_____

二、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. 你打算去哪里？_____
2. 你打算带些什么？_____
3. 你打算什么时候去机场？_____
4. 谁将和你一起去机场？_____
5. 你跟我说什么了？_____
6. Are you ready for your trip tomorrow? _____
7. I think so. But I feel nervous. _____
8. You can make a list of things to do. _____
9. Safe trip, Daming! _____
10. It will be all right. _____

Unit 2 I'm in New York now.

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 宠物_____　2. 说,讲_____
3. 建筑物_____　4. try American food _____
5. 发现,弄清_____　6. make Chinese food _____
7. speak English _____　8. arrive here _____
9. at the airport _____　10. tall buildings _____
11. 美国的;美国人的;美国人_____　12. 更多的(量),较多的(量)_____

二、重点句子。（英汉互译）

1. 这是我的新宠物。它讲英语。_____
2. 我现在在纽约。_____
3. 我昨天到了这里。_____
4. 但是我想尝尝美式食物。_____
5. 奶奶给我做了中国菜。_____
6. There are lots of tall buildings, cars and people. _____

参考答案

Module 1

Unit 1 We lived in a small house.

一、1. 还,仍然 2. (电视或广播)节目
3. (外)孙子;(外)孙女 4. 采访者
5. 不同的 6. 电视机 7. life 8. enough
9. ago 10. change 11. lady

二、1. was 2. were 3. weren't
4. did 5. watched 6. lived

三、1. Thank you for talking to us.
2. We lived in a small house.
3. We didn't have enough food.
4. There weren't many buses.
5. We've got lots of food.
6. There are lots of buses and cars.
7. 它是一个关于中国的节目。
8. 许多年前中国的生活很是不同。
9. 它有怎样的不同? 10. 现在呢?

Unit 2 She didn't have a television.

一、1. night 2. field 3. work 4. fire
5. radio 6. or 7. write 8. hope 9. 电话
10. 不能

二、1. 昨晚我看了一个关于中国的电视节目。
2. 一位老太太谈论了她很多年前的生活。
3. She worked in the fields.
4. She cooked on a fire.
5. She didn't have a television or a radio.
6. She couldn't read or write.

Module 2

Unit 1 She learnt English.

一、1. learnt to dance 2. learnt to cook
3. taught languages 4. wrote a book
5. foreign languages 6. learnt English

二、1. learnt 2. taught 3. wrote 4. danced

三、1. 她曾经是个舞蹈演员。
2. 她在中国的许多城市都跳过舞。
3. Did she learn any foreign languages?
4. She learnt English.
5. —Did he learn English too?
—No, he didn't.
6. But he's learning English now!

Unit 2 Mr Li was a teacher.

一、1. go to school 2. learnt Maths
3. taught Chinese 4. twenty years ago
5. a good pupil 6. studied very hard

二、1. likes liked liking
2. learns learnt learning
3. teaches taught teaching
4. studies studied studying
5. writes wrote writing

三、1. Twenty years ago, Mr Li was a teacher.
2. He taught Chinese.
3. He studied very hard.
4. Now Mr Li doesn't work.
5. He's learning English.
6. (过去)他喜欢上学。
7. 他喜欢在学校工作。

Module 3

Unit 1 She had eggs and sausages.

一、1. hamburger 2. English 3. breakfast
4. lunch 5. sandwich 6. dish 7. 传统的
8. 炸鱼加炸薯条

二、1. Yesterday she had an English breakfast.
2. —What did she have?
—She had eggs and sausages.

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用

3. What did she have for lunch?
4. 它是一道传统的英国菜。
5. 我收到了一封来自玲玲的电子邮件。
6. ——玲玲喜欢英式食物吗?
——是的,她喜欢。她说它很美味!

Unit 2 Sam ate four hamburgers.

一、1. gave 2. tonight 3. ate 4. very much
5. 想念中国菜 6. cook Chinese food

二、1. She gave her hamburgers to Sam.
2. He likes hamburgers very much.
3. I miss Chinese food.
4. 今天萨姆在学校里吃了四个汉堡包!
5. 玲玲不喜欢汉堡包。
6. 今晚妈妈准备给我们做中国菜。

Module 4

Unit 1 Let's make a home library.

一、1. library 2. student 3. sent 4. wrong
5. idea 6. put 7. dear 8. heavy
9. dictionary 10. card 11. ask
12. 激光唱片,光盘 13. 架子
14. 图书卡,借书证

二、1. Let's make a home library.
2. These are all books about science.
3. —Where are the books about sports, please?
—They are on Shelf C.
4. —What are these big books?
—They're dictionaries.
5. We haven't got books for you.
6. 现在我们可以邀请他们来了。
7. 它们放错位置了。

Unit 2 We can find information from books and CDs.

一、1. 信息 2. 电子书 3. 项目
4. 介绍,指南,手册 5. 话题 6. way
7. on 8. film

二、1. 做一个科学项目 2. 获取信息
3. 找到信息 4. 不同的方式
5. 又,还,也 6. 关于这个话题

三、1. I want a Chinese book.
2. Where can I find it?
3. We can find information from books and CDs.
4. 这是一个我们从学校图书馆得到信息的指南。
5. 有许多不同的方法来找到关于这个话题的信息。

Module 5

Unit 1 It's big and light.

一、1. light 2. hard 3. easy 4. pocket
5. umbrella 6. take 7. 坏的,破的
8. 轮子 9. 百货商店 10. 售货员,营业员

二、1. This black bag is nice.
2. And it's got two pockets.
3. Look at this blue one.
4. It's big and light.
5. 你可以把你的雨伞放在那儿。
6. 对您来说它易于携带。
7. 你不能带着它去中国。
8. 我们就要它了。

Unit 2 It's too big for you.

一、1. too 2. try 3. lovely

二、1. But it's too big for you!
2. Try this white one.
3. Have you got a small one, please?
4. You can take it to China.

Module 6

Unit 1 I went there last year.

一、1. moon 2. get 3. west 4. July 5. stay
6. parent 7. June 8. 记得 9. south

二、1. 一些有趣的照片 2. 在七月
3. 在中国的南部 4. 去年

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用

5. 在中国的西部 6. 每年

三、1. This is Xinjiang. I went there last year.

2. It's in the west of China.

3. 七月份,我们和奶奶待了一周。

4. 我的堂兄弟们每年都来北京玩。

5. 他和他的三个孩子住在那里。

6. —Did you go with your parents?

—Yes, I did.

7. —Where did you go for the holidays?

—I went to the moon.

8. —How did you get there?

—I used my computer.

9. Lingling has got some interesting photos.

10. Can I see them?

Unit 2 She visited the Tianchi Lake.

一、1. east 2. best 3. north 4. rest

5. ride a horse 6. rode 7. last July

8. 休息一下 9. 玩得很开心

10. 游览天池 11. 爬天山

二、1. Last July Lingling went to Xinjiang with her parents.

2. Xinjiang is in the west of China.

3. 她在那里过得很愉快。

4. 东奔西跑,还是家里最好。

Module 7

Unit 1 My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning.

一、1. evening 2. late 3. worker 4. factory

5. early 6. taxi 7. 上班 8. 每天早上

9. 每天晚上 10. 每夜 11. 在工厂里

12. 一名出租车司机

二、1. My father goes to work at eight o'clock every morning.

2. —What does he do?

—He's a worker in a factory.

3. —Dad, will you take us to the park tomorrow morning?

—Yes. I'll take you there at half past seven.

Unit 2 I'll be home at seven o'clock.

一、1. 一刻钟 2. to 3. worry

4. a quarter to eight 5. half past eight

6. at eight o'clock

二、1. It's six o'clock now.

2. It's half past six.

3. It's a quarter to seven.

4. —What time will you be home?

—I'll be home at seven o'clock.

5. ——你将在7点到家吗?

——是的。

6. 你要迟到吗,爸爸?

7. 别担心!

8. 他来了。

Module 8

Unit 1 Will you help me?

一、1. paper 2. Chinese 3. so 4. word

5. a toy panda 6. make a kite

7. in New York 8. the Chinese word

9. 一条中国龙 10. 一个很棒的礼物

11. 当然 12. 一个好主意

二、1. It will be a great present.

2. What about a toy panda?

3. I'll make a kite!

4. Will it be windy in New York?

5. —Will you help me?

—Of course I will.

6. 我打算去拜访我在纽约的堂弟。

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用

7. 我可以带什么礼物呢?

8. 你可以在它上面写上汉字“龙”。

Unit 2 I made a kite.

一、1. piece 2. stick 3. draw a dragon

4. cut the paper 5. fly my kite

6. a piece of yellow paper 7. 系线

二、1. made 2. drew 3. cut 4. painted

5. put 6. tied 7. flew 8. could

三、1. I made a kite.

2. I put sticks on it.

3. I painted it.

4. I cut the paper.

5. 我在一张黄纸上画了一条龙。

6. 我给它系上了绳子。

7. 然后我可以放我的风筝了。

Module 9

Unit 1 We laughed a lot.

一、1. laugh 2. letter 3. wore 4. theatre

5. women 6. told 7. actor 8. joke

9. show 10. after 11. restaurant 12. ready

13. 一家儿童剧院 14. 讲笑话

15. 开怀大笑

二、1. men 2. women 3. children

三、1. saw 2. wore 3. got 4. went 5. told

6. was 7. laughed 8. ate

四、1. Last week we went to a children's theatre.

2. The women wore men's clothes.

3. The actors told lots of jokes.

4. We laughed a lot.

5. Are you ready for your trip to the US?

Unit 2 Mum bought new T-shirts for you.

一、1. borrow 2. at all 3. read 4. history

5. another 6. in 7. ask 8. bring

9. 忘,忘记 10. 问题 11. 不久,很快

12. 在三周后 13. 中国历史 14. 中国歌曲

二、1. We are going to see you in three weeks.

2. Mum bought new T-shirts for you.

3. 不要忘了带一些中国歌曲的唱片。

4. 我们可以在晚上听听它们。

Module 10

Unit 1 Where are you going?

一、1. 没事,没问题 2. 护照 3. nervous

4. when 5. airport 6. ticket 7. end

8. safe 9. feel nervous 10. make a list

二、1. Where are you going?

2. What are you going to take?

3. When are you going to the airport?

4. Who's going to the airport with you?

5. What did you say to me?

6. 你为明天的旅行做好准备了吗?

7. 我想是的。但是我感到紧张。

8. 你可以把要做的事情列一个清单。

9. 一路平安,大明!

10. 一切都会好的。

Unit 2 I'm in New York now.

一、1. pet 2. speak 3. building

4. 尝尝美式食物 5. find out 6. 做中国菜

7. 讲英语 8. 到达这里 9. 在机场

10. 高楼大厦 11. American 12. more

二、1. This is my new pet. It speaks English.

2. I'm in New York now.

3. I arrived here yesterday.

4. But I want to try American food.

5. Grandma made Chinese food for me.

6. 有许多高楼大厦、汽车和人。

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用